



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

dec T 918.79.445

CLASSICAL WORKS.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY



THE ESSEX INSTITUTE
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION

GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
OF NEW YORK

JANUARY 25, 1924

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from
Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College.
12mo. 194 pages.

Elementary
language.

Revised

ns, Notes,

ition, for
intended
tax. Part
to Idioms

War, with
ns of Bat-

al Gram-
D. 12mo.

Composi-
D. 12mo.

Imitative
nson, Pro-
dition, en-
Index, etc.

291 pages.
h English
phical and
CER, D. D.

Schools and
the Univer-

3 2044 097 055 610

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 320 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 163 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

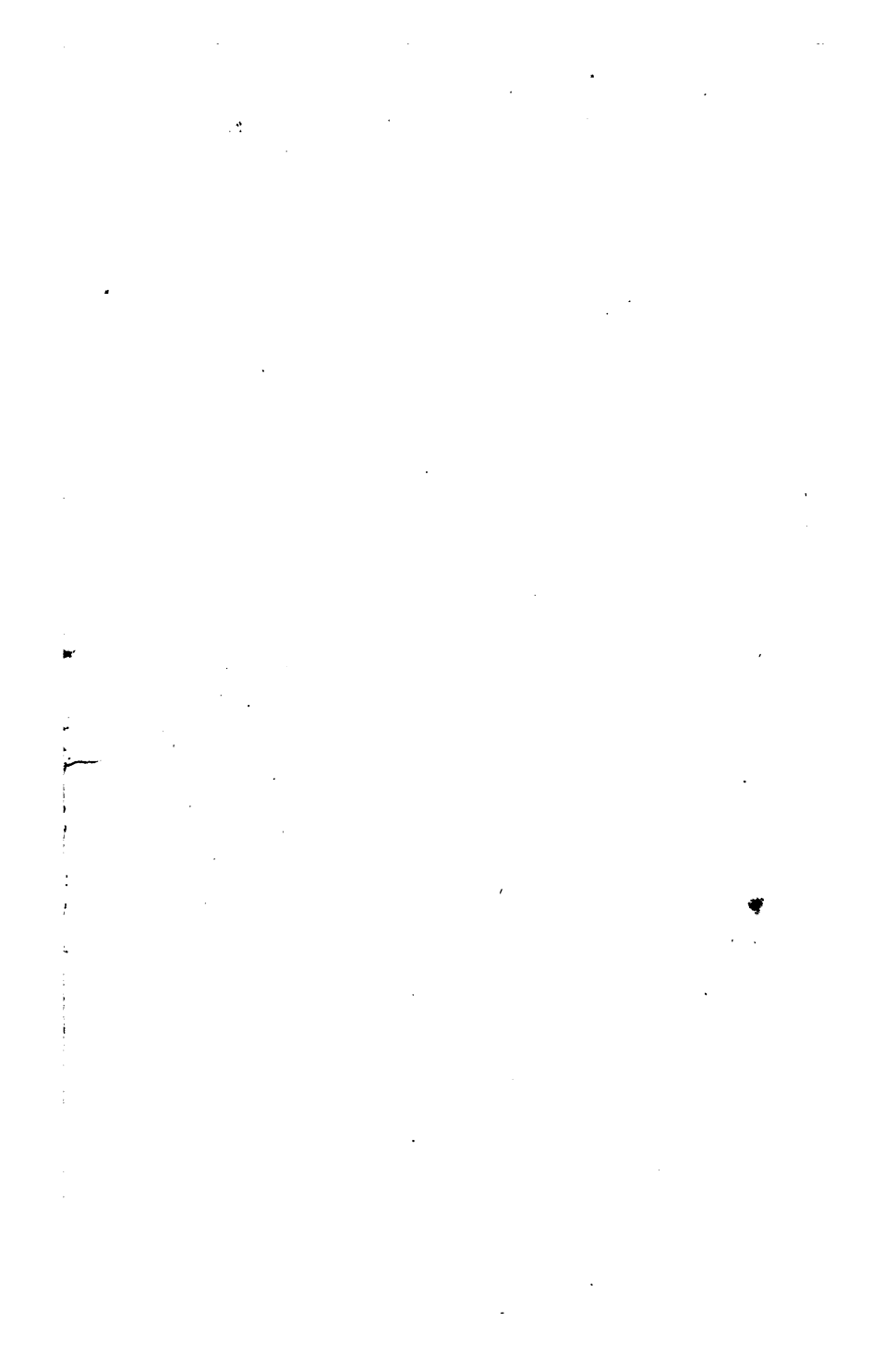
Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.

SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.



W D M E Rherson

Walpole
Mass

Dear Academy-



A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION,

EMBRACING

IMPORTANT RESULTS OF RECENT PHILOLOGICAL RESEARCH.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

549 AND 551 BROADWAY.

LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.

1879.

Edue T 918.79.445
✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 5, 1924

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

P R E F A C E .

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the

NOTE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

Teachers will observe that, by the help of the table on page 356, all text-books which refer to this grammar can be used with this edition without inconvenience.

and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

Educ T ✓ 918.79.445

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON
JANUARY 5, 1924



P R E F A C E .

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotefend and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his *Analysis of Latin Verbs*.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

PREFACE

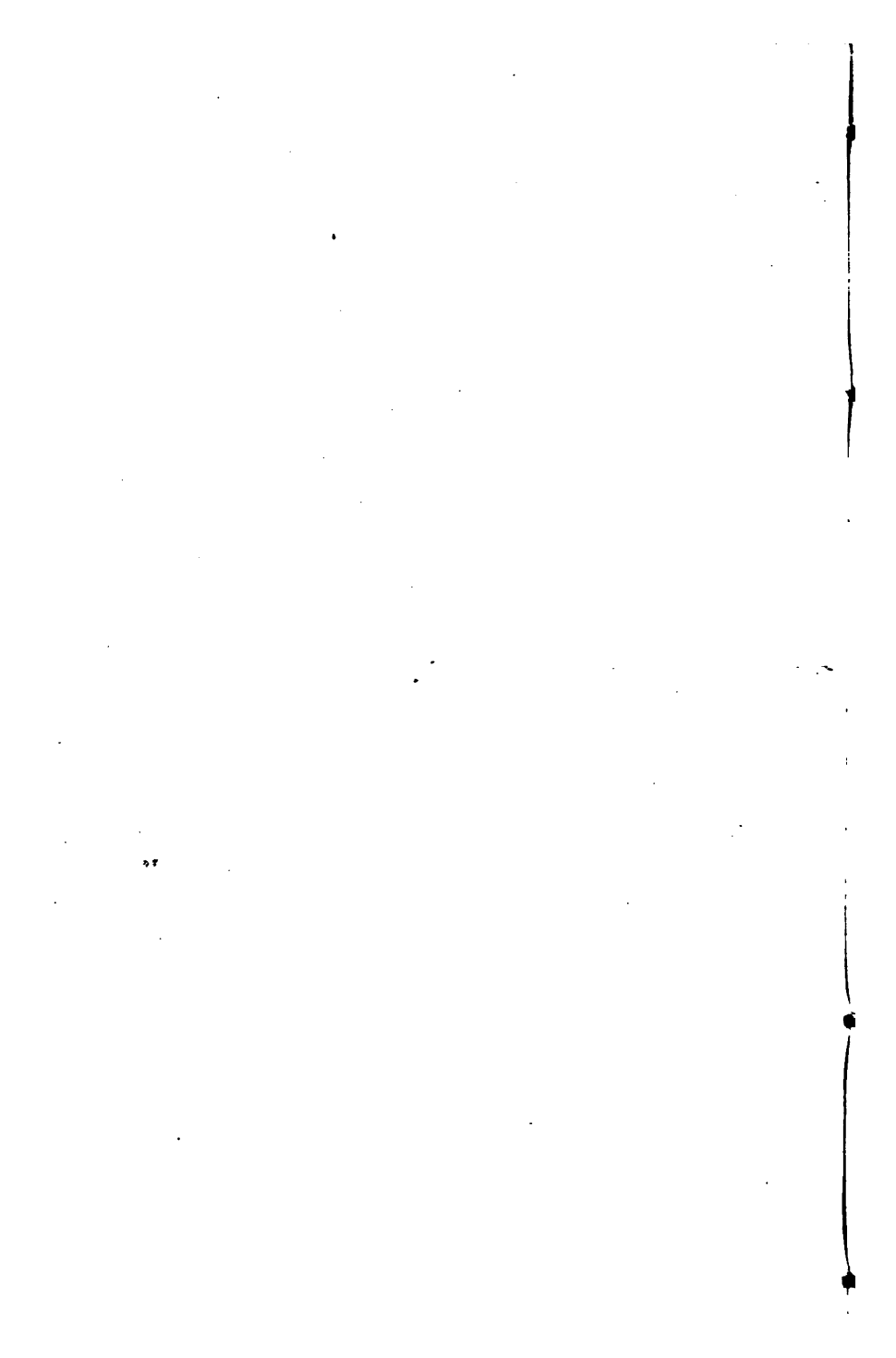
TO THE REVISED EDITION.

PARTS First and Second in this edition have been entirely rewritten. The recent researches in Comparative Philology have thrown new light upon Latin forms and inflections, and have revealed many important facts in the development and growth of the language. Accordingly, in the present revision, it has been the constant aim of the author to secure for the learner the full benefit of all the practical results which these labors in the field of philology have brought within the proper sphere of the school. The general plan and scope of the work, however, remain the same as in former editions. Only such changes and additions have been made as seemed to promise desirable aid to the learner. Care has been taken to exclude from the work every thing which might divert his attention from the one object before him—the attainment of a full and accurate knowledge of the language.

In this connection, the author desires to express anew his grateful acknowledgments to the teachers and educators whose verdict of approval has contributed so largely to the success of his works. To their hands this new edition is now respectfully committed.

A. HARKNESS.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *July*, 1874.



CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet,	1
English Method of Pronunciation,	2
Roman Method,	5
Continental Method,	7
Quantity, Accentuation,	7
Euphonic Laws,	8
I. Changes in Vowels,	8
II. Changes in Consonants,	9

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender,	11
Person, Number, and Case,	12
Declension,	12
First Declension,	13
Greek Nouns,	14
Second Declension,	15
Greek Nouns,	17
Third Declension,	18
Class I.—Consonant Stems,	18
Stems in a Labial,	18
Stems in a Dental,	19
Stems in a Guttural,	20
Stems in a Liquid,	20
Stems in <i>S</i> ,	22
Class II.—I-Stems,	22
Special Paradigms,	26
Greek Nouns,	27
Synopsis of the Third Declension,	28
Gender,	34
Fourth Declension,	36
Fifth Declension,	38
Comparative View of Declensions,	39
General Table of Gender,	40

	Page.
Declension of Compound Nouns,	41
Irregular Nouns,	41
I. Indeclinable,	42
II. Defective,	42
III. Heteroclites,	44
IV. Heterogeneous,	44

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions,	46
Third Declension,	48
Irregular Adjectives,	51
Comparison,	52
I. Terminational Comparison,	52
II. Adverbial Comparison,	54
Numerals,	55

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns,	60
Possessive,	61
Demonstrative,	62
Relative,	64
Interrogative,	65
Indefinite,	66

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods,	67
Tenses,	68
Numbers, Persons,	69
Conjugation,	69
Paradigms of Verbs,	70
Verbal Inflections,	88
Synopsis of Conjugation,	90
Verbs in <i>io</i> : Conjugation III.,	93
Deponent Verbs,	96
Periphrastic Conjugation,	99
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation,	100
Comparative View of Conjugations,	101
Analysis of Verbal Endings,	103
I. Tense-Signs,	103
II. Mood-Signs,	103
III. Personal Endings,	104
Formation of Stems,	106
I. Present Stem,	106
II. Perfect Stem,	107
III. Supine Stem,	108
Euphonic Changes,	109

CONTENTS.

xi

	Page.
Classification of Verbs,	110
First Conjugation,	110
Second Conjugation,	112
Third Conjugation,	115
Fourth Conjugation,	125
Irregular Verbs,	127
Defective "	133
Impersonal "	135

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	137
Prepositions,	138
Conjunctions,	139
Interjections,	140

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words,	141
Derivative Nouns,	141
Derivative Adjectives,	145
Derivative Verbs,	147
Derivative Adverbs,	149
Composition of Words,	151
Compound Nouns,	152
Compound Adjectives,	153
Compound Verbs,	153
Compound Adverbs,	153

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.		
I. Classification of Sentences,		154
II. Simple Sentences,		156
III. Complex Sentences,		158
IV. Compound Sentences,		159

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns,	160
Predicate Nouns,	160
Appositives,	161
II. Nominative,	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative,	163
IV. Accusative,	163
I. Direct Object,	164
Two Accusatives,	165
II. Subject of Infinitive,	167
III. Agreement of Accusative,	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense,	168
With or without Prepositions,	168
Accusative of Time and Space,	168
Accusative of Limit,	168
Accusative of Specification,	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations,	169
V. Dative,	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object,	170
Dative of Advantage,	171
Dative with Compounds,	172
Dative of Possessor,	173
Dative of Agent,	173
Ethical Dative,	174
Two Datives,	174
II. Dative with Adjectives,	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs,	176
VI. Genitive,	176
I. Genitive with Nouns,	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives,	180
III. Genitive with Verbs,	182
Predicate Genitive,	182
Genitive of Place,	183
Genitive in Special Constructions,	183
Genitive and Accusative,	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs,	187
VII. Ablative,	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means,	188
Ablative of Price,	190
Ablative with Comparatives,	190
Ablative of Difference,	191
Ablative in Special Constructions,	192
II. Ablative of Place,	193
Ablative of Source and Separation,	195
III. Ablative of Time,	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic,	197
V. Ablative of Specification,	198
VI. Ablative Absolute,	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions,	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions,	199

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives,	201
Use of Adjectives,	202
Comparison,	203

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns,	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns,	206
Reflexive Use,	206
Demonstrative Pronouns,	208
Relative Pronouns,	209
Interrogative Pronouns,	210
Indefinite Pronouns,	211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		
I.	Agreement of Verbs,	212
II.	Use of Voices,	214
III.	Tenses of the Indicative,	215
IV.	Use of the Indicative,	219
V.	Tenses of the Subjunctive,	219
	Sequence of Tenses,	220
VI.	Use of the Subjunctive,	223
	I. Potential Subjunctive,	223
	II. Subjunctive of Desire,	225
	III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result,	226
	IV. Subjunctive of Condition,	232
	V. Subjunctive of Concession,	236
	VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time,	238
	VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions,	242
	VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction,	244
	IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,	245
	Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua,	246
	Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in Oratio Oblique	248
VII.	Imperative,	248
	I. Tenses of the Imperative,	248
	II. Use of the Imperative,	249
VIII.	Infinitive,	250
	I. Tenses of the Infinitive,	251
	II. Subject of the Infinitive,	252
	III. Predicate after the Infinitive,	253
	IV. Construction of the Infinitive,	254
IX.	Subject and Object Clauses,	258
X.	Gerund,	262
	Gerundive,	263
XI.	Supine,	266
XII.	Participles,	267

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	270
Prepositions,	271
Conjunctions,	271
Interjections,	274

CHAPTER VII.

	Page.
Rules of Syntax,	274

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.

I. Arrangement of Words,	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses,	285

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity,	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity,	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables,	289
II. Quantity in Increments,	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings,	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables,	297

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject,	300
I. Metrical Feet,	300
II. Verses,	302
III. Figures of Prosody,	304
II. Varieties of Verse,	305
I. Dactylic Verse,	305
II. Anapaestic Verse,	308
III. Trochaic Verse,	308
IV. Iambic Verse,	309
V. Ionic Verse,	312
VI. Choriambic Verse,	312
VII. Logaeodic Verse,	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses,	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal,	315

APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech,	320
Latin Authors,	322
Roman Calendar,	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures,	325
Abbreviations,	327
Index of Verbs,	328
Index of Subjects,	336
Table of corresponding articles in the two editions,	356

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts :

I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. SYNTAX, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. PROSODY, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. Originally *i* and *u* were used both as vowels and as consonants, and accordingly supplied the place of *j* and *v*.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS.—Letters are divided into two classes :

I. VOWELS, a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. CONSONANTS :

1. *Liquids*, l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants*, h, f, v, j, s.

3. *Mutes* : 1) Labials—*lip-letters*, b, p, f, v.

2) Dentals—*teeth-letters*, d, t.

3) Gutturals—*throat-letters*, c, g, k, q, h.

4. *Double Consonants*, x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae, oe, au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x = cs or gs ; z = ds or sd*.

3. *Ch, ph, th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c, p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

5. PRONUNCIATION.—Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. Before *r*, *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e, i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her, fir, fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far, for*.

3. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o* : *quar'-tus*, as in *quarter*.

7. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel : *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong : *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di'-e-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.¹

3. In penultimate² syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* : *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrya*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r* : *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) **A** unaccented has the sound of a final in *America* : *men'-sa*.

2) **I** and **y** unaccented in any syllable except the first and last generally have the short sound : *nob'-i-lis* (*nob'-e-lis*), *Am'-y-cus* (*Am'-e-cus*).

3) **U**, etc.—**U** has the short sound before *bl* ; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl* : *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

4) **I**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* sometimes stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* : *A-cha'-ia* (*A-ka'-ya*), *Pom-pe'-ius* (*Pom-pe'-yus*), *La-to'-ia* (*La-to'-ya*), *Har-py'-ia* (*Har-py'-ya*).

5) **U**.—After *q* and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *u* : *qui* (*kwi*), *qua* ; *lin'-gua* (*lin'-gwa*), *lin'-guis*. Sometimes also after *s* : *swa'-de-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

6) COMPOUND WORDS.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound : *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *pro'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (8, 1), retain that sound in compounds : *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*. *E'-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.

8. SHORT SOUNDS.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys* : except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases : *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants ex-

¹ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing : hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes ; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrya*.

² Penultima, the last syllable but one.

cept a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*.

1) **A**, **e**, or **o**, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) Compounds. See 7, 6.)

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ā-lus*.¹

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.¹

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. **Ei** and **oi** are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*. See Synaeresis, 669, II.

2. **Ui**, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (a'-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) **Ch** is hard like *k*: *Cho'-rus* (ko'-rus), *Chi'-os* (Ki'-os).

2) **G** has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *si'-dus*.

1) *S* final, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spez*, *praez*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *para*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser, etc.

¹ The diphthong has the long sound in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta* according to 7, 8, but the short sound in *Daed'-ā-lus* (Ded'-a-lus) and *Oed'-i-pus* (Ed'-i-pus) according to 8, 8, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

3. **T** has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. **X** has generally its regular English sound like *kz*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But at the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

12. **C, S, T, X**—*Aspirated*.—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c, s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

1. **T** loses the aspirate—(1) after *s, t*, or *x*: *Os'-ti-a*, *Al'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*: *flec'-ti-er*—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (*tyon*); *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phi'-ty-on*.

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

14. In the division of words into syllables:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants are joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) A single or double consonant is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.

2) Two consonants are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But, *x* following a consonant is joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerx'-es*.

3) Of three or more consonants, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two are joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*.

3. But compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of those parts is entire, and ends in a consonant: *hos'-ce*, *post'-quam*.

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā	like <i>a</i> in father: <i>ā'-rīs</i> .	ǣ	like <i>a</i> in fast: <i>ǣ'-mēt</i> .
ē	<i>a</i> made: <i>ē'-dī</i> .	ĕ	<i>e</i> net: <i>rĕ'-gĕt</i> .

LONG.			SHORT.		
ī	like <i>e</i> in <i>me</i> :	ī'-rī.	ĭ	like <i>i</i> in <i>divert</i> :	vĭ'-dĕt.
ō	<i>o</i> rode :	ō'-rās.	ŏ	<i>o</i> romance :	mŏ'-nĕt.
ū	<i>o</i> do :	ū'-nō.	ŭ	<i>u</i> full :	sŭ'-mūs.

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound : *sunī*, *u* as in *sū'-mūs*.

2. **Y**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *u* and *i* : *Nŷ'-sā*.

3. **L**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* generally stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* (17) : *A-chā'-iā* (*A-ka'-ya*).

4. **U**.—After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w* : *qui* (*kwe*), *lin'-guā* (*lin'-gwa*). So also in *cuī*, *huī*, *luī*, and sometimes after *s* : *suā'-dē-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound :

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes) : *men'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how* : *cau'-sā*.

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin* : *foe'-dūs*.

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words : *dein*, *neu'-tēr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice :

c like *k* in *king* : *cē'-lēs* (*kalas*), *cī'-vī* (*kewe*).

g *g* get : *gē'-nūs*, *rē'-gīs*.

j *y* yet : *jā'-cēt* (*yaket*), *jūs'-sūm*.

s *s* son : *sā'-cēr*, *sō'-rŏr*.

t *t* time : *tī'-mŏr*, *tō'-tūs*.

v *w* we : *vā'-dūm*, *vī'-cī*.

4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs : *mō'-rē*, *per-suā'-dē*, *men'-sae*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:¹ *pä'-tër, pä'-trës, gë'-në-rä, dö'-më-nüs, nö'-scü, si'-sü,* *clau'-strä, men'-sä, be'-lüm, jäs'-süm, tem'-plüm, emp'-tüs.* But

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts is entire and ends in a consonant: *äb'-te, äb'-t'-rät.*

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.²

21. LONG.—A syllable is long in quantity

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec.*

2. If its vowel is followed by *j, x, z,* or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex, mons.*

22. SHORT.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dä'-ës, vë'-ae, nî'-hîl.*³

23. COMMON.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grî.*

1. The signs ¯, ˇ, ˘ are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ä-grō-rüm.*

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa.*

¹ By some grammarians a mute and a liquid are always joined to the following vowel, as also any combination of consonants which can begin a Greek word: *ä'-gnie, o'-mnis, ä'-pse,* but there is little evidence that the ancient Romans divided words in this way.

² Common, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

³ No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2, 2).

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*¹ if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *Antepenult*:² *hŏ-nŏ'-rĭs*, *con'-sŭ-tis*.

1. Genitives in *i* for *ii* and vocatives in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-gē'-nā* for *in-ge'-ni-i*; *Mer-cŭ'-rĭ* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e*.

2. Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3. Compounds are accented like simple words; but

1) The enclitics, *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *hŏm'-i-nē'-quē*, *men-ā'-quē*.

2) *Fācio*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cŭl-ē-fā'-cŭ*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mŏn'-u-ē'-runt*; *mŏn'-u-ē-rā'-mŭs*; *in-slau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

5. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hŏn'-ō-rĭf'-i-cen-tis'-sŭ-mŭs*.

EUPHONIC LAWS.

26. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with certain euphonic laws.

I. CHANGES IN VOWELS.

27. Vowels are often lengthened, especially in compensation for the dropping of consonants: *servōms*, *servōs*; *rēgema*, *rēgēs*.

28. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus *e* is the favorite vowel before *r*, *i* before *s*, *u* before *l*, especially before *l* followed by another consonant: *cĭnĭs*, *cĭnĕrĭs* for *cĭnĭsĭs* (35), ashes; *vult* for *vult*, he wishes.

1. **E** final is a favorite vowel: *servē* for *servo*, O slave: *mŏnĕrē*, for *mŏnĕrĭs*, you are advised. See 34.

2. **E** is also a favorite vowel for *ĭ*,

1) Before *x* or two or more consonants, especially in final syllables: *judex* for *judix*, judge; *mĭlēs* for *mĭlets* for *mĭlĭts*, soldier.

¹ In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, the last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

2) In accented syllables before *a*, *i*, *o*, or *u*: *ea* for *ia*, this; *ei* for *it*, these; *eo* for *io*, I go; *eunt* for *iunt*, they go.

29. Vowels are sometimes shortened, regularly so in final syllables before *m* and *t*; *ērām* for *erām*, I was; *ērāt* for *erāt*, he was.

30. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., changed to weaker vowels, in consequence of the lengthening of the word by inflection, composition, etc.

The order of the vowels from the strongest to the weakest is as follows:

a, *o*, *u*, *e*, *i*:

conficio for *confacio*, I accomplish; *servūs* for *servos*, slave; *fructūūs* for *fructūbus*, with fruits; *carmīnīs* for *carmēnis*, of song.

1. Diphthongs are also sometimes weakened:

ae (for *ai*) to *i* or *ē*: *incidīt* for *incaedit*, he cuts into.

oe (for *oi*) to *ū* or *i*: *pūnirē* for *poenire*, to punish.

au to *ū* or *ō*: *exclūdo* for *exclaudo*, to shut out.

31. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning: *tempūlūm*, *templūm*, temple; *pāteris*, *patris*, of a father; *ānīmālē*, *ānīmāl*, an animal; *ēsūm*, *sūm*, I am.

32. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted

I. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mensā-i*, *mensae*, tables.

II. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus *e* and *i* often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o*; *āmāvērāt*, *ama-ē-rat*, *āmārāt*, he had loved; *āmāvisē*, *ama-isse*, *āmāssē*, to have loved. But

1. The first vowel disappears in the following endings:

1) In *a-is*, in Declension I.: *mensa-is*, *mensis*, with tables.

2) In *o-is*, and *o-i*, in Declension II.: *servo-is*, *servis*, for slaves, *servo-i*, *servi*, slaves. But in the Dative Singular, *o-i* becomes *ō*; *servo-i*, *servō*, for the slave.

3) In *a-o* in Conjugation I.: *āmā-o*, *āmo*, I love.

2. *a-i* becomes *ē* in the Subjunctive of Conjugation I.: *āmā-is*, *āmēs*, you may love.

3. *o-ā* becomes *ā* in neuters of Declension II.: *templo-ā*, *templā*, temples.

II. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

33. *s* uniting with a preceding *c* or *g* forms *x*: *dux* for *duces*, leader; *rex* for *reges*, king.

34. **S** final is often dropped: *mōnērē* for *monēri* for *monēris*, you are advised. See 28, 1.

35. **S** standing between two vowels is generally changed to *r*: *flōrēs* for *flores*, flowers.

36. **D** and **t** are generally dropped before *s*: *lāpīs* for *lapide*, stone; *actūs* for *actate*, age; *mīlēs* for *milets*, *milite*, soldier.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. **ETYMOLOGY** treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

1. A **PROPER NOUN** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*; *Rōmā*.

2. A **COMMON NOUN** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vīr*, a man; *ēquūs*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *pōpūlūs*, people; *exercītūs*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtūs*, virtue; *justitiā*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurūm*, gold; *lignūm*, wood; *āquā*, water.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders¹—*Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicëro*; *vër*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhëntüs*, Rhine; *Nõtüs*, south wind; *Martiüs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *müliër*, woman; *leaenä*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptüs*, Egypt; *Römä*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, Delos; *pīrüs*, pear-tree.

III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fās*, right; *nihl*, nothing.

2. *Words and Clauses used as indeclinable nouns*: *tristē vālē*, a sad farewell.

43. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. EXCEPTIONS.—The endings² of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus

1) The names of rivers—*Albüs*, *Alliä*, *Leihä*, *Styz*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals*, take the gender of their endings. See 53, 1.

2. MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *civis*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. EPICENE NOUNS have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *ansër*, goose, masculine; *äquälä*, eagle, feminine.

¹ In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

² Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker ; the second, the person spoken to ; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases :

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES.—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base called the stem.

1. MEANING.—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-is*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg*, the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE.—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words ; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).¹

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows:

DEC.	I.	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
	II.	a	ae
	III.	o	i
	IV.	i or consonant.	is
	V.	u	us
		e	ei

1. The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-endings are nearly identical in all nouns.

2. But these case-endings appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns of the Third Declension, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the final vowel of the stem.

FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ā and *ē*,—*feminine*; *ās* and *ēs*,—*masculine*.²

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

	Example.	SINGULAR.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom.	mensā,		a table,	ā
Gen.	mensae,		of a table,	ae
Dat.	mensae,		to, for a table,	ae
Acc.	mensam,		a table,	am
Voc.	mensā,		O table,	ā
Abl.	mensā,	with, from, by a table,		ā
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	mensae,		tables,	ae
Gen.	ensarum,		of tables,	arum
Dat.	mensis,		to, for tables,	is
Acc.	ensas,		tables,	as
Voc.	mensae,		O tables,	ae
Abl.	mensis,	with, from, by tables.		is.

¹ And in some nouns of Greek origin.

² That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

1. **STEM.**—In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in *a*.
2. In the **PARADIGM**, observe
 - 1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.
 - 2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.
 - 3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending *a* (47, 2), which disappears in the ending *is*, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural. See 32, 1, 1).
3. **EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.**—Like *mensa* decline:
Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.
4. **LOCATIVE.**—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in *ae*: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *mīlīiae*, in war.
5. **EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.**—*Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dama*, deer, and *talpa*, mole. See also 43, 1.
6. **ARTICLE.**—The Latin has no article. A noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the*: *cōrōna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

49. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **As**, an old form for *ae*, in the Genitive of *fāmīlia*, in composition with *pāter*, *māter*, *filiūs*, and *fīlia*: *paterfamīliās*, father of a family.
2. **AI** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets: *aulāi* for *aulae*, of a hall.
3. **Um** for *arum* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardāniūdum* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.
4. **Abūs**, the original form for *is*, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deūs*, god, and *filiūs*, son: *deābūs* for *deis*, to goddesses.

50. **GREEK NOUNS.**—Nouns of this declension in *e*, *as*, and *es* are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

Epitōme, *epitome*. Aenēas, *Aeneas*. Pyrītes, *pyrites*.

SINGULAR.

N. epitōmē	Aenēās	pyrītēs
G. epitōmēs	Aenēae	pyrītai
D. epitōmae	Aenēae	pyrītai
A. epitōmēn	Aenēām, ān	pyrītēn
V. epitōmē	Aenēā	pyrītē, ā
A. epitōmē	Aenēā.	pyrītē, ā

PLURAL.

N. *ēpitōmae*G. *epitōmarūm*D. *epitōmīs*A. *epitōmās*V. *epitōmae*A. *epitōmīs.*

pŷritae

pyritārūm

pyritīs

pyritās

pyritae

pyritīs.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1) That in the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*.

2) That the stem-ending *a* is changed into *e* in certain cases of nouns in *e* and *es*.

2. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*, *epitome*.

SECOND DECLENSION: O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, *ir*, *ūs*, and *os*—*masculine*; *ūm*, and *on*—*neuter*.

Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*, are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave*. *Puer*, *boy*. *Ager*, *field*. *Templum*, *temple*.

SINGULAR.

N. *servūs*

puēr

āgēr

templūm

G. *servī*

puērī

āgrī

templī

D. *servō*

puērō

agrō

templō

A. *servūm*

puērūm

agrūm

templūm

V. *servō*

puēr

agēr

templūm

A. *servō*

puērō

agrō

templō

PLURAL.

N. *servī*

puērī

āgrī

templā

G. *servōrūm*

puerōrūm

agrōrūm

templōrūm

D. *servīs*

puērīs

agrīs

templīs

A. *servōs*

puērōs

agrōs

templā

V. *servī*

puērī

agrī

templā

A. *servīs.*

puērīs.

agrīs.

templīs.

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in *o*.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puēro*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the stem-ending *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *serve*,¹ that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i* and *o-is*),² and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

¹ See 30, and 23, 1.

² See 32, II. 1 and 8.

3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o* (47, 2), are as follows:

SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūs, —</i> ¹	<i>ūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ē, —</i> ¹	<i>ūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ōrūm</i>	<i>ōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ōs</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>is.</i>	<i>is.</i>

4) That *puer* and *āger* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the *Nom.* and *Voc.*; *Nom. puer* for *puērus*, *Voc. puer* for *puēre*.

5) That *āger* inserts *e* before *r* in the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*²

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the *Nom.*, *Accus.*, and *Voc.* alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 46, 2, 1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *SERVUS*: *dōmīnus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gēner*, son-in-law.—Like *AGER*: *māgister*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

4. NOUNS IN *er* AND *ir*.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *āger*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *vīri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armīger*, *armīgēri*, armor-bearer; *signīfer*, *signīfēri*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtīber*, Celtiberian; ³ *gēner*, son-in-law; *Iber*, Spaniard; ³ *Līber*, Bacchus; *lībēri*, children; *Mulcīber*, Vulcan; ³ *presbīter*, elder; *sōcer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. *DEUS*.—Declined thus: *Sing. deūs, deī, deō, deūm, deūs, deō*: *Plur. N. and V. deī, dīi, dī; G. deōrūm, deūm; D. and A. deīs, dīis, dīs, Acc. deōs.*

¹ The endings of the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.* are wanting in nouns in *er*.

² In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases; but in *āger* it is inserted in the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*, as *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

³ *Celtīber* and *Iber* have *e long* in the *Gen.*, and *Mulcīber* sometimes drops *e*.

6. **LOCATIVE.**—Names of Towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular in **i**: *Cōrinthi*, at Corinth; *Ephēsi*, at Ephesus; *hūmī*, on the ground.

52. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **I** for **ii** by contraction in the Gen. Sing., without change of accent: *ingē nī* for *ingē'niī*, of talent.

2. **I** for **ie**, common in proper names in **ius**, without change of accent: *Mercū'ri* for *Mercū'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fili* for *filiē*, son; *gēni* for *gēnie*, guardian spirit.

3. **Us** for **e** in the Voc. of *deus*, god, rare in other words.

4. **Um** for **ōrum**, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *tālētūm* for *tālētōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deūm* for *deōrum*; *libērūm* for *libērōrum*; *Argivūm* for *Argivōrum*.

53. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. **Feminine**:—(1) See 42, II., but observe that many names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees*, follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of *gems and ships* are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *carbāsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. **Neuter**:—*pēlāgus*, sea; *virus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

54. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows:

Delos, *f.*,¹ *Delos*. Androgeos, *Androgeos*. Ilion, *Ilion*.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> Delōs	Andrōgeōs	Ilīōm
<i>G.</i> Delī	Androgeōs, ī	Ilīī
<i>D.</i> Delō	Androgeō	Ilīō
<i>A.</i> Delōm	Androgeōm, ō	Ilīōm
<i>V.</i> Delē	Androgeōs	Ilīōm
<i>A.</i> Delō.	Androgeō.	Ilīō.

1. The Plural of nouns in **os** and **on** is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *ōe* in the Nom. Plur., and *ōn* in the Gen.

2. Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in **us** and **um**, and are declined like *servus* and *regnum*. Many in **os** or **on** have also a form in **us** or **um**.

3. Greek nouns in **eus**. See 68 and 68, 1.

4. *Panthus* has Voc. *Panthū*; *pēlāgus*, Acc. Plur., *pēlāgē*.

¹ *M* stands for *masculine*, *F* for *feminine*, and *N* for *neuter*.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes :

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.¹

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL: **B** OR **P**.

Princeps, m.,² a leader, chief. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. princeps,	a leader,	s
G. principis,	of a leader,	is
D. principi,	to, for a leader,	i
A. principem,	a leader,	em
V. princeps,	O leader,	s
A. principē,	with, from, by a leader,	ē

PLURAL.

N. principes,	leaders,	ēs
G. principum,	of leaders,	um
D. principibus,	to, for leaders,	ibus
A. principes,	leaders,	ēs
V. principes,	O leaders,	ēs
A. principibus,	with, from, by leaders.	ibus.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In this Paradigm observe

1) That the stem is *princip*, modified before an additional syllable to *princip*. See 30 and 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are appended to the stem without change. See 47, 2.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short *e* or *i* generally takes the form of *ē* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is *e* and in *jūdex*, *i*. For a similar change in the radical vowel, see *mīlēs*, *mīlitis* (58) and *carmēn*, *carminis* (60). See also *ōpūs*, *ōpēris* (61).

¹ For Gender see 99–115.

² See foot-note p. 17.

3. In monosyllables in *ds* the stem ends in *i*. See *urbs*, 64.

4. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 86, 88.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL : D OR T.

Lapis, M., *stone*. *Aetas*, F., *age*. *Miles*, M., *soldier*.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N. lāpīs</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mīlēś</i>
<i>G. lapīdīs</i>	<i>aetātīs</i>	<i>mīltīs</i>
<i>D. lapīdī</i>	<i>aetātī</i>	<i>mīltī</i>
<i>A. lapīdēm</i>	<i>aetātēm</i>	<i>mīltēm</i>
<i>V. lapīs</i>	<i>aetās</i>	<i>mīlēś</i>
<i>A. lapīdē</i>	<i>aetātē</i>	<i>mīltē</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>N. lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltēs</i>
<i>G. lapīdūm</i>	<i>aetātūm</i>	<i>mīltūm</i>
<i>D. lapīdībūs</i>	<i>aetātībūs</i>	<i>mīltībūs</i>
<i>A. lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltēs</i>
<i>V. lapīdēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>	<i>mīltēs</i>
<i>A. lapīdībūs.</i>	<i>aetātībūs.</i>	<i>mīltībūs.</i>

Nepos, M., *grandson*. *Virtus*, F., *virtue*. *Caput*, N., *head*.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N. nēpōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>cāpūt</i>
<i>G. nepōtīs</i>	<i>virtūtīs</i>	<i>capītīs</i>
<i>D. nepōtī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	<i>capītī</i>
<i>A. nepōtēm</i>	<i>virtūtēm</i>	<i>capūt</i>
<i>V. nepōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>capūt</i>
<i>A. nepōtē</i>	<i>virtūtē</i>	<i>capītē</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>N. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capītā</i>
<i>G. nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtūtūm</i>	<i>capītūm</i>
<i>D. nepōtībūs</i>	<i>virtūtībūs</i>	<i>capītībūs</i>
<i>A. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capītā</i>
<i>V. nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtūtēs</i>	<i>capītā</i>
<i>A. nepōtībūs.</i>	<i>virtūtībūs.</i>	<i>capītībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In these Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *lāpīd*, *aetāt*, *mīltī*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt* and *cāpūt*.

2) That *mīlēś* has the variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *cāpūt*, *ū*, *ī*. See 57, 2.

3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lāpīs* for *lapīds*, *aetās* for *aetāts*, *mīlēś* for *mīlēts*, *virtūs* for *virtūts*. See 36.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter cāpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That the *neuter, cāpūt*, has no case-ending in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing., ā in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur., and the case-endings of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. NEUTER STEMS IN *at* drop *t* in the Nom. Sing. and end in ā: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poēmātis*; Stem, *poēmāt*. These nouns sometimes have *is* for *ūs* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *poēmātis* for *poēmātībūs*.

3. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 69, 78–84.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: C OR G.

Rex, M., <i>king.</i>	Judex, M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	Radix, F., <i>root.</i>	Dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. rex	jūdex	rādex	dux
G. rēgīs	judicīs	radicīs	dūcīs
D. regī	judicī	radicī	ducī
A. regēm	judicēm	radicēm	ducēm
V. rex	judex	radix	dux
A. regē	judicē	radicē	ducē

PLURAL.

N. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
G. regūm	judicūm	radicūm	ducūm
D. regībūs	judicībūs	radicībūs	ducībūs
A. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
V. regēs	judicēs	radicēs	ducēs
A. regībūs.	judicībūs.	radicībūs.	ducībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdic*, *radic* and *dūc*—*jūdic* with the variable vowel—*i*, *ē*. See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *z*. See 33.

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION.—See NOUNS IN *z*: 92–98.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID: L, M, N, OR R.

Sol, M., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, M., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, M., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, M., <i>father.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. sōl	consul	passēr	pātēr
G. solīs	consulīs	passērīs	pātērīs
D. solī	consulī	passērī	pātērī

<i>A. solēm</i>	<i>consülēm</i>	<i>passērēm</i>	<i>patrēm</i>
<i>V. söl</i>	<i>consül</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>patrēr</i>
<i>A. solē</i>	<i>consülē</i>	<i>passērē</i>	<i>patrē</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>N. solēs</i>	<i>consülēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>consülüm</i>	<i>passērüm</i>	<i>patrüm</i>
<i>D. solībūs</i>	<i>consulībūs</i>	<i>passerībūs</i>	<i>patribūs</i>
<i>A. solēs</i>	<i>consülēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>V. solēs</i>	<i>consülēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>A. solībūs.</i>	<i>consulībūs.</i>	<i>passerībūs.</i>	<i>patribūs.</i>

<i>Pastor, m.,</i> <i>shepherd.</i>	<i>Leo, m.,</i> <i>lion.</i>	<i>Virgo, f.,</i> <i>maiden.</i>	<i>Carmen, n.,</i> <i>song.</i>
--	---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N. pastör</i>	<i>leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>carmën</i>
<i>G. pastörīs</i>	<i>leönīs</i>	<i>virginīs</i>	<i>carmīnīs</i>
<i>D. pastörī</i>	<i>leönī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>carmīnī</i>
<i>A. pastörēm</i>	<i>leönēm</i>	<i>virginēm</i>	<i>carmën</i>
<i>V. pastör</i>	<i>leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>carmën</i>
<i>A. pastörē</i>	<i>leönē</i>	<i>virginē</i>	<i>carmīnē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. pastörēs</i>	<i>leönēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>G. pastörüm</i>	<i>leönüm</i>	<i>virginüm</i>	<i>carmīnüm</i>
<i>D. pastorībūs</i>	<i>leonībūs</i>	<i>virginībūs</i>	<i>carmīnībūs</i>
<i>A. pastörēs</i>	<i>leönēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>V. pastörēs</i>	<i>leönēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>A. pastorībūs.</i>	<i>leonībūs.</i>	<i>virginībūs.</i>	<i>carmīnībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *söl*, *consül*, *passēr*, *pätēr*, *pastör*, *leön*, *virgön*, and *carmën*.

2) That *virgo* (*virgön*) has the variable vowel, *ö*, *ī*, and *carmën*, *ö*, *ī*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. *s*, the usual case-ending for masc. and fem. nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastör* shortens *o*, while *leön* and *virgön* drop *n*.

2. HIEMS, the only stem in *m*, takes *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Also *sanguis* (for *sanguins*), blood, and *Sälämīs* (for *Salämīns*), Salamis, which drop *n* before *s*.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *passēr*, but those in *ter*, and a few others, are declined like *pätēr*. See 77, II.

4. LEO AND VIRGO.—Most nouns in *o* are declined like *leo*, but those in *do* and *go*, with a few others, are declined like *vingo*. See 72 with exceptions.

5. FOUR STEMS IN *ŏ* change *o* to *u*. See 77, IV.

6. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 72, 75-77.

61. STEMS ENDING IN *s*.

Flos, m., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, n., <i>right.</i>	Opus, n., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, n., <i>body.</i>
-----------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. flōs	jūs	ōpūs	corpūs
G. florīs	jūrīs	opērīs	corpōrīs
D. florī	jurī	opērī	corpōrī
A. florēm	jus	opūs	corpūs
V. flos	jus	opūs	corpūs
A. florē	jurē	opērē	corpōrē

FLURAL.

N. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
G. florūm	jurūm	opērūm	corpōrūm
D. florībūs	jurībūs	operībūs	corporībūs
A. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
V. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
A. florībūs.	jurībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *ōpēs*, and *corpōs*.

2) That *ōpūs* has the variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *corpūs*, *ō*, *ī*.

3) That *s* of the stem becomes *r* between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*). See 35.

4) That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 8).

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 79, 80, 82-84.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN *i*.—Nouns in *is*.—Abl. Sing. in *i*, or in *i* or *ē*.

Tussis, f., <i>cough.</i>	Turris, f., <i>tower.</i>	Ignis, m., <i>fire.</i>	Case-Endings.
------------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
G. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
D. tussī	turrī	ignī	ī
A. tussīm	turrīm, ēm	ignēm	īm, ēm

<i>V. tussis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>A. tussī</i>	<i>turrī, ē</i>	<i>ignī, ē</i>	<i>ī, ē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. tussēs</i>	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. tussīūm</i>	<i>turrīūm</i>	<i>ignīūm</i>	<i>iūm</i>
<i>D. tussībūs</i>	<i>turrībūs</i>	<i>ignībūs</i>	<i>ībūs</i>
<i>A. tussēs, is</i>	<i>turrēs, is</i>	<i>ignēs, is</i>	<i>ēs, is</i>
<i>V. tussēs</i>	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. tussībūs.</i>	<i>turrībūs.</i>	<i>ignībūs.</i>	<i>ībūs.</i>

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
2. That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending *i*, which disappears in certain cases.
3. That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing.

II. Like *RUSSIS*—ACC. *im*, ABL. *i*—are declined

1. *Buris*, plough-tail; *ravis*, hoarseness; *stis*, thirst.
2. In the Sing. (1) Names of *rivers* and *places* in *is* not increasing in the Gen.: *Tiberis*, *Hispalis*. See 629. (2) Greek nouns in *is*, G. *is*, and some others.

III. Like *TURRIS*—ACC. *im*, *ēm*; ABL. *i*, *ē*—are declined

Clavis, key; *fēbris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *navis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *scūria*, axe; *sēmentis*, seed-time; *strigilis*, strigil.

1. *Partis*, part, sometimes has *partim* in the Acc.
2. *Araris* or *Arar*, the Saône, and *Liger*, the Loire, have Acc. *im*, *ēm*, Abl. *i*, *ē*.

IV. Like *IGNIS*—ACC. *ēm*, ABL. *i*, *ē*—are declined

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *avis*, bird; *bilis*, bile; *civis*, citizen; *classis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *finis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

1. Adjectives in *ēr* and *is* used substantively have the Abl. generally in *i*: *Septembēr*, *Septembrī*, September; ¹ *fāmiliāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names, and *jūvēnis*, youth, have *ē*: *Jūvēnālis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

2. *Imbēr*, storm; *rūs*, country; *sors*, lot; *sūpellex*, furniture; *vespēr*, evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Abl. in *i*.

3. Many names of towns have a *Locative* in *i*: *Carthaginī*, at Carthage; *Tibūrī*, at Tibur. See 45, 2; 48, 4.

¹ Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **L**—*Neuters in ō, al, and ar.*

Mare, <i>sea.</i>	Animāl, <i>animal.</i>	Calcar, <i>spur.</i>	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.			
N. mārē	ānimāl	calcār	ō— ²
G. marīs	animālīs	calcārīs	īs
D. marī	animālī	calcārī	ī
A. mārē	animāl	calcār	ō— ²
V. mārē	animāl	calcār	ō— ²
A. marī ¹	animālī	calcārī	ī
PLURAL.			
N. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	iā
G. mariūm	animālīūm	calcārīūm	iūm
D. mariībūs	animālībūs	calcārībūs	ībūs
A. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	iā
V. mariā	animālīā	calcārīā	iā
A. mariībūs.	animālībūs.	calcārībūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. of *māre*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānimāl* (for *animāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*). See 28, 1 ; 31.

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending **i**.

2. The following have **ō** in the Abl. Sing. :—(1) Names of towns in **ō**; *Prænestē*.—(2) Nouns in **al** and **ar** with a *short* in Gen. : *sāl, sālē, salt*; *nectār, nectāre, nectar*.—(3) *Fār, farre, corn*.—(4) Generally *rēte, net*, and in poetry sometimes *māre*.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **L**—*Nouns in īs, es, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant,—Abl. Sing. in ō.*

Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nubes, F., <i>cloud.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.			
N. hostīs	nūbēs	urbēs	arx ³
G. hostīs	nubīs	urbīs	arcīs

¹ Sometimes *māre* in poetry.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

³ **x** in *arx*=*es*,—*c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

<i>D. hosti</i>	<i>nubi</i>	<i>urbi</i>	<i>arci</i>
<i>A. hostēm</i>	<i>nubēm</i>	<i>urbēm</i>	<i>arcēm</i>
<i>V. hostis</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbes</i>	<i>arx</i>
<i>A. hostē</i>	<i>nubē</i>	<i>urbē</i>	<i>arcē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. hostēs</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>
<i>G. hostiūm</i>	<i>nubiūm</i>	<i>urbiūm</i>	<i>arciūm</i>
<i>D. hostibūs</i>	<i>nubibūs</i>	<i>urbibūs</i>	<i>arcibūs</i>
<i>A. hostēs, is</i>	<i>nubēs, is</i>	<i>urbēs, is</i>	<i>arcēs, is</i>
<i>V. hostēs</i>	<i>nubēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>
<i>A. hostibūs.</i>	<i>nubibūs.</i>	<i>urbibūs.</i>	<i>arcibūs.</i>

1. **STEMS.**—These Paradigms show a combination of *i*-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *arci, arc*. The *i*-stem appears especially in the endings of the Gen. and Acc. Plur. *iūm, ēs, is*. The stem of *nubēs* seems to be *nubēs, nūbi, nūb*.

65. ENDINGS *iūm, is*.—Like the preceding Paradigms, the following classes of words have *iūm* in the Gen. Plur., and *is* with *ēs* in the Acc. Plur.

1. Most nouns in *ns* and *rs*:¹ *cliens, clientium, clientes, is*, client; *ars, artium, artes, is*, art; *cohors, cohortium, cohortes, is*, cohort.

2. Monosyllables in *s* and *x* preceded by a consonant,² and a few in *s* and *x* preceded by a vowel:³ *urbs, urbium, urbes, is*, city; *arx, arcium, arces, is*, citadel; *nox, noctium, noctes, is*, night.

3. Many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in *ēs* and *is* not increasing:⁴ *nubes, nubium, nubes, is*, cloud; *avis, avium, aves, is*, bird.

2) *Cāro*, flesh; *imber, storm*; *linter, boat*; *utēr, leathern sack*; *venter, belly*; and generally *Insuber, Insubrian*.

4. Many nouns in *ās* and *is* (Plur. *ates* and *ites*). Thus

1) Names of nations: *Arpinas, Arpinatium, etc.*; *Samnis, Samnium, etc.*

2) *Optimates* and *Pendites*, and occasionally other nouns in *as*.

¹ Some of these often have *ūm* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *pārens, parent*, generally has.

² Except (*ope*) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps, lynx, sphynx*.

³ Namely, *faux, glis, lis, mās, nīa, nox, os* (osis), *via*, generally *fraus* and *mās*.

⁴ But *cānis, iuvēnis, strues, vātes*, have *ūm*; *āpis, mensis, sēdes, volūcris, ūm* or *iūm*; *compes, iūm*.

66. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

Sus, M. & F., Bos, M. & F., Nix, F., Senex, M., Vis, F.,
swine. ož, cow. snow. old man. force.

SINGULAR.

N. sūs	bōs ¹	nix	senex	vis
G. suīs	bōvis	nivīs	senīs	vis ²
D. suī	bovī	nivī	senī	vi ²
A. suēm	bovēm	nivēm	senēm	vīm
V. sus	bos	nix	senex	vis
A. suē	bovē	nivē	senē	vi

PLURAL.

N. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
G. suām	{ boviām boām	niviām	seniām	virām
D. { suibūs sūbūs	{ bōbūs ¹ būbūs ¹	nivibūs	senibūs	viribūs
A. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
V. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
A. { suibūs sūbūs	{ bōbūs būbūs	nivibūs.	senibūs.	viribūs.

1. STEMS.—These are *su*; *bōv*; *nīg* (*nix* = *nigs*), *niv*, *nivi*; *senec*, *sen*; *vis*, *vi* (sing.), *virī* (for *visi*, plur.). See 35.

2. *Sus*, and *grus* (crane), the only *u* STEMS in this declension, are declined alike except in the Dat. and Abl. Pl., where *grūs* is regular: *grūbūs*.

3. *JUPITER, Jupiter*.—Declined thus: *Jūpītēr*, *Jōvis*, *Jovī*, *Jovēm*, *Jūpītēr*, *Jovē*. STEMS *Jūpītēr* and *Jōv*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS¹ OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N. s ²	— ³	īs, ēs, s	ē ³
G. īs	īs	īs	īs
D. ī	ī	ī	ī
A. ēm	—	īm, ēm	ē—
V. s	—	īs, ēs, s	ē—
A. ē	ē	ī, ē	ī

¹ *Bōs*=*bova*, *bous*; *bōbūs*, *būbūs*=*bovibus*, *boubus*.

² The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vis*, *vi*—are rare.

³ The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.			
N. <i>ēs</i>	ἑ	ēs	ἑ
G. <i>ūm</i>	ūm	ūm	ūm
D. <i>ībūs</i>	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs
A. <i>ēs</i>	ἑ	ēs, <i>is</i>	ἑ
V. <i>ēs</i>	ἑ	ēs	ἑ
A. <i>ībūs.</i>	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs.

1. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur :

- 1) **Ei**, for *i*, in the Dat. Sing. : *aerē* for *aeri*.
- 2) **Eis**, for *is*, in the Acc. Plur. : *civis* for *civis*, *cives*.
- 3) GREEK ENDINGS. See 68.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples :

Lampas, F., Phryx, M. & F., Heros, M., Case-Endings.
torch. Phrygian. hero.

SINGULAR.			
N. <i>lampās</i>	Phryx	hērōs	s
G. <i>lampādīs, ōs</i>	Phrygīs, ōs	herōīs	is, ōs
D. <i>lampādī</i>	Phrygī	herōī	i
A. <i>lampādēm, ā</i>	Phrygēm, ā	herōēm, ā	ēm, ā
V. <i>lampās</i>	Phryx	herōs	s
A. <i>lampādē</i>	Phrygē	herōē	ē

PLURAL.			
N. <i>lampādēs, ēs</i>	Phrygēs, ēs	herōēs, ēs	ēs, ēs
G. <i>lampādūm</i>	Phrygūm	herōūm	ūm
D. <i>lampadībūs</i>	Phrygībūs	herōībūs	ībūs
A. <i>lampādēs, ās</i>	Phrygēs, ās	herōēs, ās	ēs, ās
V. <i>lampādēs, ēs</i>	Phrygēs, ēs	herōēs, ēs	ēs, ēs
A. <i>lampadībūs.</i>	Phrygībūs.	herōībūs.	ībūs.

Pericles, M., Paris, M., Dido, F., Orpheus, M.,
Pericles. Paris. Dido. Orpheus.

SINGULAR. ¹			
N. <i>Pēriclēs</i>	Pārīs	Didō	Orpheus ²
G. <i>Periclīs, ī</i>	Paridīs, ōs	Didūs, ōnīs	Orph-eos, eī, ī

¹ The Plural is of course wanting.

² *Eu* a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc. : *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen. and Dat.

D. Periclī	Parīdī	Didō, ōnī	Orph-eī, ī, eō
A. Periclēm, eā, ēn	Parīdēm, ā Parīm, im	Didō, ōnēm	Orpheā, eīm
V. Periclēs, ēs, ē	Parī	Didō	Orpheu
A. Periclē.	Parīdē.	Didō, ōnē.	Orpheō.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe that these paradigms fluctuate in certain cases,—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampādīs, ōs*; *lampādēm, ā*; *hērōēs, ās*,—(2) between different declensions: PERICLES, between Dec. I., *Periclēn, Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclī* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclīs*, etc.: ORPHEUS, between Dec. II., *Orpheī, Orpheō*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheōs*, etc.

2. NOUNS IN *ŷs* have Gen. *ŷōs, ŷs*, Acc. *ŷm, ŷn*: *Othrys, Othryōs, Othrym, Othrym*.

3. THE VOCATIVE SING. drops *s*,—(1) in nouns in *eus, ŷs* and in proper names in *ās*, Gen. *antis*; *Atlas, Atlā*,—(2) generally in nouns in *is* and sometimes in other words; *Pārī*.

4. GENITIVE PLUR.—The ending *ōn* occurs in a few titles of Books: *Mētamorphōses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseōn*.

5. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLUR.—The ending *si*, before vowels *sin*, occurs in poetry: *Troādes, Troasin*.

6. A few neuters used only in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. have *ōs* in the Sing. and *ō* in the Plur.: *mēlōs, mēlō*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. NOUNS ENDING IN A VOWEL.

69. Nouns in *ā*:¹ Genitive in *ātis*: Stem in *āt*:
poēmā, poem, poemātis, poēmāt.

70. Nouns in *ō*: Genitive in *is*: Stem in *ī*:
mārē, sea, māris, mārī.

71. Nouns in *ī*:¹ Genitive in *is*: Stem in *ī*:
sināpī, mustard, sināpis, sināpī.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ītis*,—compounds of *mēli*: *oxŷmēli, oxymēlītis*, oxymel.

2. Many nouns in *ī* are indeclinable.

72. Nouns in *ō*: Genitive in *ōnis*: Stem in *ōn*:
leo, lion, leōnis, leōn.

¹ These are of Greek origin.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ōnis** :—most national names: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis, Macedonian*.
2. **īnis** :¹—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando, grandīnis*, hail; *virgo, virginis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo, ōnis*; *līgo, ōnis*; *praedo, ōnis*, also *cōmēdo, cūdo, mango, spādo, ūnēdo, ūdo*.
3. **nīs** :—*cāro, carnis* (for *carīnis*¹), flesh. See 65, 3, 2).
4. **ōnis** :—*Anio, Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio, Nerīenis*.
5. **ūs** :—few Greek feminines: *Dido, Didus*. See 68.

73. Nouns in **y**²: Gen. in **yis** (yos, ys): Stem in **ŷ**:
mīsy, copperas, misyis (yos, ys), *misŷ*.

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: only *ālēc, alēcis*, pickle; *lāc, lactis*, milk.

75. Nouns in **l**: Genitive in **lis**: Stem in **l**:
sōl, sun, *sōlis,* *sōl.*

1. *Fel, fellis*, gall; *mēl, mellis*, honey.
2. Neuters in **āl**: Genitive in **ālis**: Stem in **āl**:
ānīmāl, animal, animālis, animālī.

76. Nouns in **n**: Genitive in **nīs**: Stem in **n**:
paēān, paeān, paeānis, paeān.
flūmēn, stream, flumīnis, flumēn, īn.

1. Nouns in **ēn** have the variable radical vowel—**ē, ī**. See 60, 1, 2).
2. There are a few Greek words in **ōn**, Gen. in **ōnis, ontis**, St. in **ōn, ont**: *aēdōn, aedōnis*, nightingale; *Xēnōphōn, Xenophontis*, Xenophon.

77. Nouns in **r**: Genitive in **ris**: Stem in **r**:
carcēr, prison, carcēris, carcēr.

I. Nouns in **ar**: (1) *ār, G. ārīs, St. ārī*; *calcār, calcāris*, spur; but a few have *G. ārīs, St. ār*; *nectār, nectāris*, nectar: (2) *ār, G. ārīs, St. ārī*: *lār, lāris*, house; *pār, pāris*, pair: (3) *Fār, farriis*, corn; *hēpār, hepātis*, liver.

II. Nouns in **er**. Some drop **e** in the Genitive.

1. Those in **ter**: *pātēr, patris*, father; except *lātēr, latēris*, tile; *lātēr, itinēris*, way; *Jūpītēr, Jōvis*, and Greek nouns; *crātēr, cratēris*, bowl.
2. *Imbēr* and names of months in **bēr**: *imbēr, imbrīs*, shower; *Septembēr, Septembris*, September.

¹ Stem in *ōn, īn*. See 60, 1, 2).

² Nouns in **y** are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

III. Nouns in *ōr*: G. *ōris*, St. *ōr*: *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. *ōris*, St. *ōr*: *arbor*, *arbōris*, tree; *aequor*, sea; *marmor*, marble. But *cōr*, *cordis*, heart.

IV. Four in *ūr*: G. *ūris*, St. *ūr*: *ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, thigh; *jēcūr*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *fēmur* has also *fēminis*, and *jēcūr*, *jecūnōris*, *jecūnēris*, and *jēcūnēris*.

78. Nouns in *ūt*: Genitive in *ītis*: Stem in *ūt*, *īt*:
cāpūt, head, *capītis*, *capūt*, *īt*.

III. NOUNS ENDING IN *s* PRECEDED BY A VOWEL.

79. Nouns in *as*: Genitive in *ātis*: Stem in *āt*:
aetās, age, *aetātis*, *aetāt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ātis*:—*ānās*, *anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. *ādīs*:—*vās*, *vādīs*, surety; *Arōās*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;¹ *lampās*, *lampādīs*, torch.
3. *āris*:—*mās*, *māris*, a male;—stem, *mās*, *māri*. See 35.
4. *āsis*:—*vās*, *vāsis*, vessel.²
5. *assis*:—*ās*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. *antis*:—only masc. Greek nouns; *ādāmās*, *antis*, adamant.

80. Nouns in *ēs*: Genitive in *īs*: Stem in *i*:³
nūbēs, cloud, *nubis*, *nubi*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *edis*:—(1) *ēdis*: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) *ēdis*: *pes*, *pēdis*, foot.
2. *aedis*:—*praes*, *praedis*, surety.
3. *ēris*:—*Cēres*, *Cerēris*.⁴
4. *aeris*:—*aes*, *aeris*, copper.⁴
5. *etis*:—(1) *ētis*: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquiries*, *rēquies*, and a few Greek words: *lēbes*, *lēpes*.—(2) *ētis*: *ābies*, fir-tree; *āries*, ram; *pāries*, wall.
6. *essis*:—*bes*, *bessis*, two-thirds.

81. Nouns in *ēs*: Genitive in *ītis*: Stem in *ēt*, *īt*:
mīlēs, soldier, *mīlītis*, *mīlēt*, *īt*.

¹ Greek nouns sometimes have *ddos* for *ādīs*.

² *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels. See 61, 1, 3).

³ But see 64, 1.

⁴ See 61, 1, 3).

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ſtis* :—*interpres*, interpreter; *ſēges*, crop; *tēges*, covering.
2. *idis* :—*obſes*, hostage; *praeses*, president. See 57, 2.

82. Nouns in *is* : Genitive in *is* : Stem in *ī* :
 avis, *bird*, *avis*, *avī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ſris* :—*cīnis*, *cinēris*,¹ ashes; *cūcūmis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmīs*, ploughshare.
2. *idis* :—*cāpis*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lāpis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek ² words: as *tīrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis*, and *tigris*.
3. *inis* :—*pollis* or *pollēn*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.
4. *iris* :—*glīs*, *glīris*,³ dormouse.
5. *issis* :—*sēmīs*, *semiſsis*, half an as: stem, *semiſsī*, *semiſs*.
6. *itis* :—*lis*,⁴ strife; *Dis*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*.

83. Nouns in *ōs* : Genitive in *ōris* : Stem in *ōs* :
 mōs, *custom*, *mōris*, *mōs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. *ōtis* :—*cos*, *cōlis*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *nēpos*, grandson; *adcer-dos*, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. *ōdis* :—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian. See 36.
3. *ōis* :—a few masc. Greek nouns: *hēros*, hero; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. *ōris* :—*arbo* or *arbōr*, tree.
5. *ossis* :—*ōs*, *ossis*, bone: stem, *ossi*, *oss*.
6. *ōvis* :—*bo*s, *bōvis*, ox. See 66.

84. Nouns in *us* : Genitive in *ſris* or *ōris* : Stem in *ſs* or *ōs*.

I. *ſris* :—*lātūs*, *latēris*, side: stem, *lātēs*. So also: *acūs*, *foedus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *mānus*, *dlus*, *dnus*, *opus*, *pondus*, *rūdus*, *scēlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *Vēnus*, *viscus*, *vulnus*.

II. *ōris* :—*corpūs*, *corpōris*, body: stem, *corpōs*. So also *dēciūs*, *dēdēcus*, *fūcīnus*, *fēnus*, *frīgus*, *lēpus*, *lātus*, *nēmus*, *pectus*, *pēcus*, *pēnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, *tergus*.

¹ Stem *cīnis*, *cinēr* for *cīnēs* with variable vowel *ī*, *ē*. See 23, 85, and 57, 2.

² Greek nouns sometimes have *īdos* or even *tos* for *īdis*; *Sāldmīs* has *Sālamīnis*; *Sīmōis*, *Sīmōentis*.

³ Stem *glīs*, *glīri* for *glīei*, 85.

⁴ Stem *līti*, *lī*.

91. Nouns in **rs** : Genitive in **rtis** : Stem in **rti** :
 ars, *art.* artis, arti.

V. NOUNS ENDING IN **x**.

92. Nouns in **ax** : Genitive in **ācis** : Stem in **āc** :
 pax, *peace,* pācis, pāc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ācis** :—*fax*, *fācis*, torch ; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis** :—a few Greek names of men : *Astydnax*.

93. Nouns in **ex** : Genitive in **īcis** : Stem in **īc**, **ēc** :
 jūdex, *judge,* judīcis, judīc, *ēc.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ecis** :—(1) **ēcis** : *ālex*, pickle ; *vervex*, wether.—(2) **ēcis** : *ncz*, murder ; *fēnīsez*, mower.
2. **aecis** :—*faez*, *faecis*, lees.
3. **egis** :—(1) **ēgis** : *lex*, law ; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) **ēgis** : *grex*, flock ; *āquīlex*, water-inspector.
4. **ectilis** :—*sūpellez*, *sūpellectilis*, furniture.¹
5. **īgis** :—*rēmex*, *remīgis*, rower. See 28, 2, 1).
6. **is** :—*sēnex*, *sēnis*, old man. See 66, 1.

94. Nouns in **ix** : Genitive in **īcis** : stem in **īc** :
 rādix, *root,* radīcis, radīc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **īcis** :—*appendix*, appendix ; *cālix*, cup ; *fornix*, arch ; *piz*, pitch ; *sālix*, willow, and a few others.
2. **īgis** :—*striz*, screech-owl ; and a few Gallic names : *Dumnōriz*, *Orgēdōriz*.
3. **īvis** :—*niz*, *nīvis*, snow. See 66.

95. Nouns in **ox** : only *vox*, *vōcis*, voice ; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names in **ox**, Gen. in **ōcis** or **ōgis** : *Cappādoz*, *Cappadōcis* ; *Allōbroz*, *Allobrogis*.

96. Nouns in **ux** : Genitive in **ūcis** : Stem in **ūc** :
 dux, *leader,* dūcis, dūc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ūcis** :—*lux*, *lūcis*, light ; *Polluz*.

¹ Stem, *sūpellec*, *sūpellectil*.

2. **aucis** :—*faux* (def.) *faucis*, throat.

3. **ugis** :—(1) **ūgis** : *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ūgis** : *conjuz*, *conjūgis*, spouse.

97. Nouns in **yx** : from the Greek, variously declined : *Eryx*, *Erycis*, *Eryx* ; *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm ; *Styx*, *Stȳgis*, *Styx* ; *coccyx*, *coccȳgis*, cuckoo ; *ōnyx*, *onȳchis*, *onyx*.

98. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant :

Genitive in **cis** : Stem in **cī** :

arx, *citadel*, *arcis*, *arcī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

gis :—A few Greek nouns : *phālanx*, *phalangis*, *phalanx*.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns of the Third Declension in

o, **or**, **os**, **er**, and **es** *increasing in the genitive*,¹

are masculine : *sermo*, discourse ; *dōlōr*, pain ; *mōs*, custom ; *aggēr*, mound ; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

100. EXCEPTIONS IN **O**.—*Feminine*, viz. :

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *inis*, except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cūpido* and *margo*, masc. or fem.

2. *Cāro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.

3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **io** : *rātio*, reason ; *concia*, an assembly.

101. EXCEPTIONS IN **OR** :

1. *Feminine* :—*arbōr*, tree.

2. *Neuter* :—*ādōr*, spelt ; *aequor*, sea ; *cor*, heart ; *marmor*, marble.

102. EXCEPTIONS IN **OS** :

1. *Feminine* :—*arbōs*, tree ; *cos*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *zōs*, dawn.

2. *Neuter* :—*ōs*, mouth ; *ōs*, bone ; and a few Greek words : *chaos*.

103. EXCEPTIONS IN **ER** :

1. *Feminine* :—*lintēr*, boat (sometimes masc.).

2. *Neuter* :—(1) *cādāvēr*, corpse ; *ūter*, way ; *tūber*, tumor ; *ūber*, udder ; *vēr*, spring ; *verber*, scourge.—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ērīs* : *ācēr*, maple-tree ; *pāpāver*, poppy.

¹ That is, having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

104. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Feminine*:—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *mergēs*, sheaf; *quīs*, rest (with its compounds); *sīgēs*, crop; *tīgēs*, mat; sometimes *alēs*, bird, and *quādrupēs*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter*:—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the Third Declension in

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive, and s preceded by a consonant,*

are feminine: *aetās*, age; *nāvis*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbs*, city.

106. EXCEPTIONS IN **AS**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ās*, an as (a coin), *vās*, surety, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *antis*.
2. *Neuter*:—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *ātis*.

107. EXCEPTIONS IN **IS** and **YS**.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in *ālis*, *ollis*, *cis*, *mis*, *nīs*, *guis*, *quis*: *nātālīs*, birthday; *ignīs*, fire; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine: *cānīs*, annis, *cīnis*, *finis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axīs*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis* (f.), path;¹ *ensīs*, sword; *lūpiā*, stone; *mensis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *sentis*, briar; *torris*, brand; *vectis*, lever,² and a few others.
3. Names of mountains in **ys**: *Othryā*.

108. EXCEPTIONS IN **X**.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *ōraz*, raven; *thōraz*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prex*), *stipellēx*.
3. *Cūlix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *trādux*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in **yx**.
4. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

109. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ācinācēs*, cimeter; sometimes *pālumbēs*, dove; and *vēprēs*, thorn-bush.
2. *Neuter*:—a few Greek nouns: *ēcoēthēs*, desire; *hippōmānēs*, hippomane.

110. EXCEPTIONS IN **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth; *fons*, fountain; *mons*, mountain; *pons*, bridge; generally *ādēps*, fat, and *rūdēns*, cable.

¹ Sometimes feminine.

² For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 42, I.

2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood: *oriens* (sol), east; *confluens* (amnis), confluence; *tridens* (raster), trident; *quadrans* (ās), quarter.
3. *Chalybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Antmans*, animal, is masc., fem., or neuter.

111. Nouns of the Third Declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us,

are neuter: *poēmā*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, animal; *carmēn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

112. EXCEPTIONS IN **L** AND **AR**:—*Masculine*:

Mūgyl, mullet; *sāl*,¹ salt; *sōl*, sun; *lār*, hearth; *sālār*, trout.

113. EXCEPTIONS IN **N**:

1. *Masculine*:—*pectēn*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an, en, in, on**: *paēn*, paeon; *cānōn*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*ācōn*, nightingale; *alcyōn* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. EXCEPTIONS IN **UR**.—*Masculine*:

Furfūr, bran; *turtūr*, turtle-dove; *vultūr*, vulture.

115. EXCEPTIONS IN **US**:

1. *Masculine*:—*lēpūs*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in **pus**.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellūs*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtūs*, virtue; *pālūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: **U** NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs,—*masculine*; **ū**,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.	
SINGULAR.			
<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct ui	corn ū	ui	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ūm	corn ū	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

¹ Sometimes *neuter* in the singular.

	PLURAL.		
N. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
G. fructuūm	cornuūm	uūm	uūm
D. fructibūs	cornibūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)
A. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
V. fructūs	cornū	ūs	ū
A. fructibūs.	cornibūs.	ībūs (ūbūs).	ībūs (ūbūs).

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Fourth Declension the stem ends in *ū*: *fructū*, *cornū*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending *ū*, weakened to *ī* in *ībūs*, but retained in *ūbūs*. See 80.

117. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. *Ubūs* for *ībūs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lācus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pēcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spēcus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vīru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sinus*, and *tōnītrus*.

2. *Uī*, the uncontracted form for *ui*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3. *U* for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *equitātū* for *equitatui*, cavalry.

118. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ācus*, needle; *cōlus*, distaff; *dōmus*, house; *mānus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *īdus*, ides; *Quinquātrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pēnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spēcus*, den,—(3) see 42, II.

2. *Neuter*:—*sēcus* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spēcus*, den.

119. SECOND AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dōmus*, *r.*, house, has a Locative form *domī*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. dōmūs	dōmūs
G. domūs	domuūm, domōrūm
D. domuī (domō)	domībūs
A. domūm	domōs, domūs
V. domūs	domūs
A. domō (domū)	domībūs.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *pinus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cōlus*, distaff.

8. A few nouns, especially *sēditus* and *tūmultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *sēdīti*, *tūmultī*.

FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*,—*feminine*, and are declined as follows :

Dies, <i>day</i> .	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diēī	rēī	eī
D. diēī	rēī	eī
A. diēm	rēm	ēm
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diē	rē	ē
PLURAL.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diērūm	rērūm	ērūm
D. diēbūs	rēbūs	ēbūs
A. diēs	rēs	ēs
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diēbūs.	rēbūs.	ēbūs.

1. STEM.—The stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ē*: *diē*, *re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending *ē*, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) in the ending *eī*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

3. IRREGULAR ENDINGS:—*ī* or *i* for *eī* in the Gen. and Dat.: *ācie* for *aciēī*; *perniciī* for *perniciēī*.

4. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

121. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—MASCULINE: *Dies*, *day*, and *mēridies*, *mid-day*, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

122. The Five Declensions, which are only varieties of one general system of inflection, have been produced by the union of the different final letters of the stem with the following:

CASE-ENDINGS FOR ALL NOUNS.

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> s —	m —
<i>Gen.</i> is, i ¹	is, i
<i>Dat.</i> i	i
<i>Acc.</i> m, ōm ²	m —
<i>Voc.</i> s —	m —
<i>Abl.</i> d, ōd ³	d, ōd
PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> ōs, i ⁴	ŏ
<i>Gen.</i> ūm, rūm ¹	ūm, rūm
<i>Dat.</i> būs, lbūs, is ⁴	būs, lbūs, is
<i>Acc.</i> ms, ems ²	ŏ
<i>Voc.</i> ōs, i	ŏ
<i>Abl.</i> būs, lbūs, is ⁴ .	būs, lbūs, is.

123. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-s</i>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
	mensā	servūs	rex	fructūs	rēs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-is</i>	<i>fructu-is</i>	<i>re-i</i>
	mensae	servī	rēgis	fructūs	rēi
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i>	<i>servo-i</i>	<i>reg-i</i>	<i>fructu-i</i>	<i>re-i</i>
	mensae	servō	regī	fructui	rēi
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-m</i>	<i>servo-m</i>	<i>reg-em</i>	<i>fructu-m</i>	<i>re-m</i>
	mensām	servūm	reg-ēm	fructūm	rēm
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i>	<i>servo-</i>	<i>reg-s</i>	<i>fructu-s</i>	<i>re-s</i>
	mensā	servō ⁵	rex	fructūs	rēs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-d</i>	<i>servo-d</i>	<i>reg-ēd</i>	<i>fructu-d</i>	<i>re-d</i>
	mensā	servō	regē	fructū	rē

¹ The endings *i* and *rūm* are used with stems in *a*, *o*, and *e*; *is* and *ūm* with other stems.

² The endings *m* and *ms* are used with vowel stems, *ēm* and *ems* (with connecting vowel *e*) with consonant stems. The plural endings *ms* and *ems* are formed by adding *s* to the singular. *M* is then dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; hence *ās*, *ōs*, *ēs*, etc. See 27.

³ The ending *d* was originally used with vowel stems, and *ēd* (with connecting vowel *e*) with consonant stems. *D* was afterwards dropped, and the preceding vowel, if short, was lengthened, except *e* in Dec. III., which was only a connecting vowel.

⁴ The endings *is* and *is* are used with stems in *a* and *o*; *ēs* with other stems; *būs* with stems in *u* and *e*; *lbūs* (with connecting vowel *i*) with consonant stems.

⁵ Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. change the stem-vowel *o* into *e*.

PLURAL.

N.	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servi	<i>reg-es</i> regēs	<i>fructu-es</i> fructūs	<i>re-es</i> rēs
G.	<i>mensa-rum</i> mensārum	<i>servo-rum</i> servōrum	<i>reg-um</i> regūm	<i>fructu-um</i> fructuūm	<i>re-rum</i> rērūm
D.	<i>mensa-is</i> mensis	<i>servo-is</i> servis	<i>reg-ibus</i> regibūs	<i>fructu-bus</i> fructibūs	<i>re-bus</i> rēbūs
A.	<i>mensa-ms</i> mensās	<i>servo-ms</i> servōs	<i>reg-ems</i> regēs	<i>fructu-ms</i> fructūs	<i>re-ms</i> rēs
V.	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servi	<i>reg-es</i> regēs	<i>fructu-es</i> fructūs	<i>re-es</i> rēs
Δ.	<i>mensa-is</i> mensis.	<i>servo-is</i> servis.	<i>reg-ibus</i> regibūs.	<i>fructu-bus</i> fructibūs.	<i>re-bus</i> rēbūs.

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.¹ Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as In- declinable Nouns.

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.²

DECLENSION I.		
Masculine. as, es.	Feminine. a, e.	Neuter.
DECLENSION II.		
er, ir, us, os.	i.	um, on.
DECLENSION III.		
o, or, os, er, es in- creasing in the geni- tive.	as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the ge- nitive, s preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, o, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
DECLENSION IV.		
us.		u.
DECLENSION V.		
	es.	

¹ For exceptions, see 43.² For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respublica* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jus jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *paterfamilias* = *pater familias* (49, 1), or *pater familiae*, the father of a family.

126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> <i>rēspūblicā</i>	<i>jūsjurandū</i>	<i>pāterfamiliās</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>jūrisjurandī</i>	<i>patrisfamilias</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>rēipublicae</i>	<i>jurijurandō</i>	<i>patrifamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>rempublicām</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>patremfamilias</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>respublicā</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>paterfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>rēpublicā</i>	<i>jurejurandō</i>	<i>patrēfamilias</i>

PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> <i>respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>G.</i> <i>rērumpublicārū</i>		<i>patrumfamilias</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>rēbuspublicis</i>		<i>patribusfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>respublicās</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>V.</i> <i>respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>rēbuspublicis.</i>		<i>patribusfamilias.</i>

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *res publica*; *pater familias* or *familias*.

2. *Paterfamilias* sometimes has *familiārum* in the plural: *patresfamiliiārum*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*hētērōclīta*¹) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*hētērōgēnea*²) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

¹ From *ἕτερος*, another, and *κλίσις*, inflection, i. e., of different declensions.

² From *ἕτερος*, another, and *γένος*, gender, i. e., of different genders.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns:

1. *Fās*, right; *nēfās*, wrong; *instār*, equality; *mānē*, morning; *nihil*, nothing; *pondō*, pound; *sēxus*, sex.
2. The letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, alphā, bēllā*, etc.
3. Foreign words: *Jacōb, libērī*; though these are often declined.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

130. PLURAL WANTING.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:
 - 1) Most names of persons and places: *Cicēro, Rōma*.
 - 2) Abstract Nouns: *fides*, faith; *justitia*, justice.
 - 3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.
 - 4) A few others: *mēridiēs*, midday; *spēcimēn*, example; *sūpellez*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespēra*, evening, etc.
2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families, classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *āvaritiās*, instances of avarice; *ōdia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plural* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

131. SINGULAR WANTING.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:
 - 1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postērī*, descendants; *gēminī*, twins; *libērī*, children.
 - 2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphī*, Delphi.
 - 3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchānalia*, *Olympia*, *Sātūrnalia*.
 - 4) *Arma*, arms; *divitiās*, riches; *exēquis*, funeral rites; *exūviae*, spoils; *ides*, *ides*; *indūtiās*, truce; *insidiās*, ambushcade; *mānae*, shades of the dead; *minae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *reliquiae*, remains.
2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *unus ex* with the plural: *unus ex libērīs*, one of the children, or a child.
3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate

villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. PLURAL WITH CHANGE OF MEANING.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Aedēs, <i>temple</i> ;	aedes, (1) <i>temples</i> , (2) <i>a house</i> . ¹
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i> .
Carcēr, <i>prison, barrier</i> ;	carcēres, <i>barriers of a race-course</i> .
Castrum, <i>castle, hut</i> ;	castra, <i>camp</i> .
Comitium, <i>name of a part of the Roman forum</i> ;	comitia, <i>the assembly held in the comitium</i> .
Cōpia, <i>plenty, force</i> ;	copiae, (1) <i>stores</i> , (2) <i>troops</i> .
Facultās, <i>ability</i> ;	facultātes, <i>wealth, means</i> .
Finis, <i>end</i> ;	finēs, <i>borders, territory</i> .
Fortūna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortūnae, <i>possessions, wealth</i> .
Grātia, <i>gratitude, favor</i> ;	gratiae, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>garden</i> ;	horti, (1) <i>gardens</i> , (2) <i>pleasure-grounds</i> .
Impēdimentum, <i>hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, (1) <i>hindrances</i> , (2) <i>baggage</i> .
Littēra, <i>letter of alphabet</i> ;	litterae, (1) <i>letters of alphabet</i> , (2) <i>epistle, writing, letters, literature</i> .
Lūdus, <i>play, sport</i> ;	ludi, (1) <i>plays</i> , (2), <i>public spectacle</i> .
Mōs, <i>custom</i> ;	mōres, <i>manners, character</i> .
Nātālis (diēs), <i>birth-day</i> ;	natāles, <i>pedigree, parentage</i> .
Opēra, <i>work, service</i> ;	opērae, <i>workmen</i> .
Pars, <i>part</i> ;	partes, (1) <i>parts</i> , (2) <i>a party</i> .
Rostrum, <i>beak of ship</i> ;	rostra, (1) <i>beaks</i> , (2) <i>the rostra or tribunes in Rome (adorned with beaks)</i> .
Sāl, <i>salt</i> ;	sāles, <i>witty sayings</i> .

133. DEFECTIVE IN CASE.—Some nouns are defective in case. Thus:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing.: (Ops), ōpis, *help*; (vix or vīcis), vīcis, *change*.

2. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: (Daps), dāpis, *food*; (dītio), dītīōnis, *sway*; (frux), frūgis, *fruit*; (internēcio), internēciōnis, *destruction*; (pollis), pollīnis, *flour*.

3. In the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur.: most nouns of the fifth declension. See 120, 4.

So also many neuters: *fār, fēl, mēl, pūs, rūš, tūs*; especially Greek neuters in *ōs*, which want these cases in the singular also: *ēpos, mēlos*.

¹ *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

4. In the Gen. Plur. : many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables : *nex, pax, pax* ; *cör, cös, rös* ; *sal, sol, lux*.

134. NUMBER AND CASE.—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other : *forts*, chance, has only *forts* and *forte* ; *luës*, pestilence, has *luës, luem, lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular : *jussu*, by order ; *mandātu*, by command ; *rögātu*, by request.

III. HETEROCLITES.

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 119.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jugërum*, an acre ; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur. : *jugërum, jugëri* ; plural, *jugëra, jugërum, jugeribus*.

2. *Väs*, a vessel ; of the third Decl., in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur. : *vas, väs* ; plural, *väsa, vasörum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia* : *Bacchänälia, Sätürnälia* ; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *örum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Rëquies*, rest ; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requis* of the fifth.

2. *Fämës*, hunger ; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famë*, of the fifth (not *famë*, of the third).

138. FORMS IN *ia* AND *ies*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V. : *luxüria, luxüries*, luxury ; *mätëria, mätëries*, material.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II. : *cönätus, cönätum*, an attempt ; *ëventus, ëventum*, event.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry : *jüventüs* (*ütis*), youth ; poetic, *jüventa* (*ae*) : *ënectüs* (*ütis*) ; old age ; poetic, *ënecta* (*ae*) : *paupertüs* (*ätis*), poverty ; poetic, *paupëries* (*ëi*).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some masculines take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender :

Jöcus, m., jest ;

plural *joci*, m., *joca*, n.

Löcus, m., place ;

“ *loci*, m., topics, *loca*, n., places.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<i>Carbāsus</i> , f., linen;	plural <i>carbāsī</i> , f., <i>carbāsa</i> , n.
<i>Margārita</i> , f., pearl;	" <i>margaritae</i> , f., <i>margarita</i> , n.
<i>Ostrea</i> , f., oyster;	" <i>ostreae</i> , f., <i>ostrea</i> , n.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

<i>Caelum</i> , n., heaven;	plural <i>caeli</i> , m.
-----------------------------	--------------------------

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

<i>Frenum</i> , n., bridle;	plural <i>freni</i> , m., <i>frena</i> , n.
<i>Rastrum</i> , n., rake;	" <i>rastri</i> , m., <i>rastra</i> , n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

<i>Epulum</i> , n., feast;	plural <i>epulae</i> , f.
----------------------------	---------------------------

144. FORMS IN *US* AND *UM*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *conditus* (*us*), *conditum* (*i*), effort; *menda* (*ae*), *mendum* (*i*), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. Bōnus, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bōnūs	bōnā	bōnūm
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonūm	bonām	bonūm
Voc.	bonē	bonā	bonūm
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō;

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bonā
Gen.	bonōrum	bonarūm	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bonā
Voc.	bonī	bonae	bonā
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs.

1. Bonus is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. Līber, *free*.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	lībēr	lībērā	lībērūm
Gen.	lībērī	lībērae	lībērī
Dat.	lībērō	lībērae	lībērō
Acc.	lībērūm	lībērām	lībērūm
Voc.	lībēr	lībērā	lībērūm
Abl.	lībērō	lībērā	lībērō;

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	lībērī	lībērae	lībērā
Gen.	lībērōrum	lībērarūm	lībērōrum
Dat.	lībērīs	lībērīs	lībērīs
Acc.	lībērōs	lībērās	lībērā
Voc.	lībērī	lībērae	lībērā
Abl.	lībērīs	lībērīs	lībērīs.

1. *Liber* is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bonus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūma</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrūma</i>	<i>aegrūma</i>	<i>aegrūma</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūma</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō</i> ;
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrūma</i>	<i>aegrārūma</i>	<i>aegrōrūma</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i> .

1. *Aeger* is declined in the Masc. like *āger* (51) and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bonus*.

2. Most adjectives in *ēr* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *ēr* and *ūr* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough ; *lācer*, torn ; *misēr*, wretched ; *prosper*, prosperous ; *tēner*, tender ; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it : *dexter*, *dextera* or *dextra*.

2) *Sātur*, sated ; *satur*, *satura*, *satūrum*.

3) Compounds in *fēr* and *gēr* : *mortīfer*, deadly ; *āliger*, winged.

151. IRREGULARITIES.—These nine adjectives have in the singular *īus* in the genitive and *i* in the dative :

Aliūs, *ā*, *ūd*, another ; *nullus*, *a*, *um*, no one ; *sōlus*, alone ; *tōtus*, whole ; *ullus*, any ; *ūnus*, one ; *aliēr*, *lērā*, *lērūm*, the other ; *ūter*, *tra*, *trum*, which (of two) ; *neuter*, *tra*, *trum*, neither.¹

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives.

2. *i* in *ius* is sometimes short ; generally so in *aliērius*.

3. *Alius* contracts the genitive *āliius* into *ālius*.

4. Like *ūter* are declined its compounds : *uterquē*, *utrois*, *uterlibē*, *uter-
cunquē*. In *aliērūter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *aliērius utrius* ; and sometimes only the latter, as *aliērutrius*.

¹ For the Declension in full see *ūnus*, 175.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows :

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī;</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs, is</i>	<i>acrēs, is</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

1. Like *ACER* are declined :

1) *Alācer*, lively; *campester*, level; *cēlēber*, famous; *cēlor*,¹ swift; *ēquester*, equestrian; *pūluster*, marshy; *pēdester*, pedestrian; *pūter*, putrid; *sālūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *vōlūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Octōber*, *brīs*.²

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs: *sālūbris*, *silvestris*, for *sālūber*, *silvester*.

¹ This retains *e* in declension: *cēlor*, *cēlēris*, *cēlēre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

² See also 77, II. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*: *acer* for *acris*, stem, *ācri*.

4. *ACER* is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *māre* (63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc. where it ends in *er*, and in the Abl. Sing. where it ends in *i*.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. <i>tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	N. <i>tristiōr</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
G. <i>tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>	G. <i>tristiōris</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>
D. <i>tristi</i>	<i>tristi</i>	D. <i>tristiōri</i>	<i>tristiōri</i>
A. <i>tristēm</i>	<i>tristē</i>	A. <i>tristiōrēm</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
V. <i>tristis</i>	<i>tristē</i>	V. <i>tristiōr</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>
A. <i>tristi</i>	<i>tristi</i> ;	A. <i>tristiōrē</i> (I)	<i>tristiōrē</i> (I);

PLURAL.

N. <i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	N. <i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
G. <i>tristiūm</i>	<i>tristiūm</i>	G. <i>tristiōrūm</i>	<i>tristiōrūm</i>
D. <i>tristiūs</i>	<i>tristiūs</i>	D. <i>tristiōribūs</i>	<i>tristiōribūs</i>
A. <i>tristēs, is</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	A. <i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
V. <i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristiā</i>	V. <i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōrā</i>
A. <i>tristiūs</i>	<i>tristiūs.</i>	A. <i>tristiōribūs</i>	<i>tristiōribūs.</i>

1. *TRISTIS* and *TRISTE* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*.

2. *TRISTIOR* is the comparative (160) of *tristis*.

3. STEMS.—The stem of *tristis* is *tristi*; that of *tristior* was originally *tristiōe*, but it has been modified to *tristiūs* (61, 1) in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. Neut., and to *tristiōr* in the other cases (35).

4. Like *TRISTIOR*, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *i*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But

5. *COMPLURES*, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium*; Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria*. See *Plūs*, 165, 1.

6. ABLATIVE IN *e*.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e*: *cognōmine* from *cognominis*, of the same name.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings.

156. Audax, *audacious*.Felix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.			
M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. audax	audax	N. felix	felix
G. audacis	audacis	G. felicis	felicis
D. audaci	audaci	D. felici	felici
A. audacem	audax	A. felicem	felix
V. audax	audax	V. felix	felix
A. audaci (ē)	audaci (ē);	A. felici (ē)	felici (ē);
PLURAL.			
N. audaces	audaciā	N. felices	felicīā
G. audacium	audacium	G. felicium	felicium
D. audacibus	audacibus	D. felicibus	felicibus
A. audaces (is)	audaciā	A. felices (is)	felicīā
V. audaces	audaciā	V. felices	felicīā
A. audacibus	audacibus.	A. felicibus	felicibus.

1. **STEMS.**—Most Adjectives of One Ending are combinations of *i*-stems and consonant stems—the former appearing in the Abl. Sing. and in the Plural. The stems of *audax* and *felix* are *audaci*, *audac*, and *felici*, *felic*.

157. Amans, *loving*.Prudens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.			
M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. amans	amans	N. prudens	prudens
G. amanti	amantis	G. prudentis	prudentis
D. amanti	amanti	D. prudenti	prudenti
A. amantem	amans	A. prudentem	prudens
V. amans	amans	V. prudens	prudens
A. amanti (i)	amanti (i);	A. prudenti (ē)	prudenti (ē);
PLURAL.			
N. amantes	amantiā	N. prudentes	prudentiā
G. amantium	amantium	G. prudentium	prudentium
D. amantibus	amantibus	D. prudentibus	prudentibus
A. amantes (is)	amantiā	A. prudentes (is)	prudentiā
V. amantes	amantiā	V. prudentes	prudentiā
A. amantibus	amantibus.	A. prudentibus	prudentibus.

1. The stems are *amanti*, *amant*; *prudenti*, *prudēt*.

2. The participle *amans* differs in declension from the adjective *prudens* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending *ē*, and the adjective, *i*. Participles used adjectively may of course take *i*. A few adjectives have only *e* in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupere*, poor;

pābes, pubēre, mature;—(2) those in *ēs*, G. *itis* or *idis*: *alex, dīces, dīves, sospes, superstes*;—(3) *caelebs, compēs, impēs, princeps*.

158. *Vētus, old.**Mēmōr, mindful.*

		SINGULAR.	
M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. <i>vētūs</i>	<i>vētūs</i>	<i>mēmōr</i>	<i>mēmōr</i>
G. <i>vetēris</i>	<i>vetēris</i>	<i>memōris</i>	<i>memōris</i>
D. <i>vetēri</i>	<i>vetēri</i>	<i>memōri</i>	<i>memōri</i>
A. <i>vetērē</i>	<i>vetūs</i>	<i>memōrēm</i>	<i>memōr</i>
V. <i>vetūs</i>	<i>vetūs</i>	<i>memōr</i>	<i>memōr</i>
A. <i>vetērē</i> (I)	<i>vetērē</i> (I);	<i>memōri</i>	<i>memōri</i> ;
		PLURAL.	
N. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērē</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>	
G. <i>vetērū</i>	<i>vetērū</i>	<i>memōrū</i>	
D. <i>veteribūs</i>	<i>veteribūs</i>	<i>memoribūs</i>	
A. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērē</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>	
V. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērē</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>	
A. <i>veteribūs</i>	<i>veteribūs</i> .	<i>memoribūs</i> .	

1. NEUTER PLURAL.—Many adjectives like *mēmōr*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neut. Plur.: *ubēr*, fertile, has *ubēra*, like *vētūs*, *vetēra*; all others have the ending *ia*, as *fēlicia, prūdētia*.

2. GENITIVE PLURAL.—Most adjectives have *ium*, but the following have *um*.

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the ablative singular (157, 2): *pauper, paupērum*.

2) Those with the genitive in *ēris, ōris, ūris*: *vētus, vetērum*, old; *mēmōr, memōrum*, mindful; *cicūr, cicūrum*, tame.

3) Those in *ceps*: *anceps, ancipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *īnops* (*ops*, *ōpum*), *inōpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. INDECLINABLE: *frūgī*, frugal, good; *nēquām*, worthless; *millē*, thousand. See 176.

II. DEFECTIVE: (*cētērus*) *cētēra, cētērum*, the other, the rest; (*lūdīcer*) *lūdīca, ludīcrum*, sportive; (sons) *sontis*, guilty; (*sēmīnex*) *sēmīnēcis*, half dead; *pauci, ae, a*, used only in the Plur. See also 158, 1.

III. HETEROCLITES.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us, a, um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hīlārus* and *hīlāris*, joyful; *exānīmus* and *exānīmīis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree : *altus*, *altior*, *altissimŭs*, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison :

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON—by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings :

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>ior, ior, iŭs.</i>			<i>issimŭs, issimă, issimŭm :</i> ¹		

Altus, *altior*, *altissimŭs* : *high, higher, highest.*

lŕvis, *levior*, *levissimŭs* : *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel : *alto*, *altior*, *altissimŭs*.

163. IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus :

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rimus** to the positive :¹ *acer*, *acrior*, *acerrimŭs*, sharp.

Vetus has *veterrimŭs* ; *maturus*, both *maturrimŭs* and *maturissimŭs* ; *dexter*, *dextrimŭs*.

2. Six in **ilis** add **limus** to the stem :¹

Facilis, *difficilis* ; *easy, difficult.*

similis, *dissimilis* ; *like, unlike.*

gracilis, *humilis* ; *slender, low :*

facilis, *facilior*, *facillimŭs*. *Imbecillis* has *imbecillimŭs*.

¹ The superlative ending *-issimŭs* is probably compounded of *is* for *ios*, the original comparative ending (154, 8), and *-simŭs* for *-rimŭs* ; *ios-simŭs*=*ios-simŭs*=*is-simŭs*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated : *facilis*, *facil-simŭs*, *facillimŭs* ; *acer*, *acer-simŭs*, *acerrimŭs*.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives :

Extērus,	exterior,	extrēmus and extīmus,	outward.
infērus,	inferior,	infirmus and imus,	lower.
sūpērus,	superior,	suprēmus and summus,	upper.
postērus,	posterior,	postrēmus and postūmus,	next.

164. Compounds in **dīcus**, **fīcus**, and **vōlus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissimus**, as if from forms in **ens** :

Mālēdīcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus,	landerous.
mūnīfīcus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus,	liberal.
bēnēvōlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus,	benevolent.

1. *Egēnus* and *prōvidus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ēgens* and *providens* : hence *egentior*, *egentissimus*, etc.

2. *Mīrifīcissimus* occurs as the superlative of *mīrificus*, wonderful.

165. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

Bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	good.
mālus,	pejor,	pessīmus,	bad.
magnus,	major,	maxīmus,	great.
parvus,	mīnor,	mīnīmus,	small.
multus,	plūs,	plūrīmus,	much.

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plūris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plūrēs* (m. and f.), *plūrī* (n.), G. *plurium*, D. and A. *pluribus*.

2: Divēs,	{ divitior,	divitissimus,	} rich.
	{ ditior,	ditissimus,	
frūgi,	frugāllior,	frugalissimus,	frugal.
nēquām,	nequior,	nequissimus,	worthless.

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

Citērior,	citīmus,	nearer.	prior,	prīmus,	former.
dētērior,	dētērīmus,	worse.	prōprior,	proxīmus,	nearer.
intērior,	intīmus,	inner.	ultērior,	ultīmus,	farther. ¹
ōcior,	ōcissimus,	swifter.			

167. COMPARATIVE WANTING.

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *mēritus*, *meritissimus*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives :

¹ These adjectives are formed from *citrā*, *dē*, *intrā*, Greek *ἔκως*, *πρὸς* or *πρὸ*, *πρὸς*, *ultrā*.

Diversus, diversissimus, <i>different.</i>	nōvus, novissimus, <i>new.</i>
falsus, falsissimus, <i>false.</i>	sācer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred.</i>
inclūtus, inclutissimus, <i>renowned.</i>	vētus, veterrimus, <i>old.</i>
invītus, invitissimus, <i>unwilling.</i>	

168. SUPERLATIVE WANTING.

1. In most verbals in *ilis* and *bīlis*: *dōcīlis*, *docilior*, *docile*.
2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *ilis*: *cāpītālis*, *capitalior*, *capital*.
3. In *ālter*, *alacrior*, active; *caecus*, blind; *diūturnus*, lasting; *longinquus*, distant; *ōpīmus*, rich; *prōclivis*, steep; *prōpinquus*, near; *sālūtāris*, salutary, and a few others.
4. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adōlescens,	ādolescentior,	mīnīmus nātu, ¹	young.
jūvēnis,	junior,	mīnīmus nātu,	young.
sēnex,	senior,	maxīmus natu,	old.

169. WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *pāternus*, paternal; *Rōmānus*, Roman; *aeīvius*, of summer.
2. Most adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *idōneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful.
3. Many derivatives in *ālis*, *āris*, *ilis*, *ulus*, *icus*, *inus*, *orus*: *mortālis* (mors), mortal.
4. *Albus*, white; *claudus*, lame; *fērus*, wild; *lassus*, weary; *mirus*, wonderful, and a few others.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive: *arduus*, *māgis arduus*, *maxīme arduus*, *arduus*.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admōdum*, *valde*, *oppidō*, very; *imprimis*, *apprimē*, in the highest degree: *valde magna*, very great. *P̄r* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *perdifficilis*, very difficult; *praeclārus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are also sometimes used,—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multō*, *longē*, much, far: *etiam diligentior*, even more diligent; *multo diligentior*, much more diligent,—(2) With the superlative: *multō*, *longē*, much, by far; *quām*, as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

¹ Smallest or youngest in age. *Nātu* is sometimes omitted.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes :

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS : *ūnus*, one ; *duō*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS : *primus*, first ; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES : *singulī*, one by one ; *binī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added :

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *plcis*, denoting so many fold : *simplex*, single ; *dūplex*, double ; *triplex*, threefold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bōnus*, and denote so many times as great : *dūplus*, twice as great ; *tripplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	primus, ¹ <i>first</i> ,	singulī, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duō, duae, duo,	secundus, ² <i>second</i> ,	binī, <i>two by two</i> .
3. trēs, triā,	tertius, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trīni).
4. quattuor,	quartus, <i>fourth</i> ,	quāterni.
5. quinque,	quintus, <i>fifth</i> ,	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septēm,	septimus,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. nōvēm,	nōnus,	nōvēni.
10. dēcēm,	dēcimus,	dēni.
11. undēcīm,	undēcimus,	undēni.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdēcimus,	duōdēni.
13. trēdēcīm, ¹	tertius dēcimus, ²	terni dēni.
14. quattuordēcīm,	quartus dēcimus,	quāterni dēni.
15. quindēcīm,	quintus dēcimus,	quīni dēni.
16. sēdēcīm or sexdēcīm, ¹	sextus dēcimus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendēcīm, ¹	septimus dēcimus,	septēni dēni.

¹ Sometimes with the parts separated : *decem et tres* ; *decem et sex*, etc.

² *Prior* is used instead of *primus* in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

³ Sometimes *dēcimus* precedes with or without *et* : *dēcimus et tertius* or *dēcimus tertius*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
18. duōdēviginti, ¹	duōdēvicēsīmus, ⁵	duōdēvicēni.
19. undēviginti, ¹	undēvicēsīmus, ⁵	undēvicēni.
20. viginti,	vicēsīmus, ⁶	vicēni.
21. {viginti ūnus,	vicesīmus primus,	vicēni singŭli.
{ ūnus ēt viginti, ²	ūnus et vicesīmus, ²	singŭli et vicēni.
22. {viginti duo,	vicesīmus secundus,	vicēni bīni.
{ duo ēt viginti,	alter et vicesīmus,	bīni et vicēni.
30. trīgintā,	trīcēsīmus, ⁶	trīcēni.
40. quādrāgintā,	quādrāgēsīmus,	quādrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmus,	quinquāgēni.
60. sexāgintā,	sexāgēsīmus,	sexāgēni.
70. septuāgintā,	septuāgēsīmus,	septuāgēni.
80. octōgintā,	octōgēsīmus,	octōgēni.
90. nōnāgintā,	nōnāgēsīmus,	nōnāgēni.
100. centŭm,	centēsīmus,	centēni.
101. {centum ūnus,	centesīmus primus,	centēni singŭli.
{ centum et ūnus, ³	centesīmus et primus	centēni et singŭli.
200. dūcenti, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmus,	dūcēni.
300. trēcenti,	trēcentēsīmus,	trēcēni.
400. quādringenti,	quādringentēsīmus,	quādringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentēsīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentēsīmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentēsīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentēsīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentēsīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. millē,	millēsīmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000. duo millia, ⁴	bīs millesīmus,	bīna millia.
10,000. dēcem millia,	dēciēs millesīmus,	dēna millia.

¹ Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 28, 29; 88, 89, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *viginti*; *duodetrīginta* or *octo et viginti*.

² If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

³ In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti*, 1120.

⁴ Sometimes *bīna millia* or *bīs milla*.

⁵ Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decimus* and *nonus decimus*.

⁶ Sometimes written with *g*: *vigesīmus*; *trigesīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
100,000. centum millia,	centies millesimus,	centēna millia.
1,000,000. dēciēs centēna mil- lia, ¹	decies centies mil- lesimus,	dēciēs centēna millia.

1. ORDINALS with *Parte*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia parte*, a third part, a third; *quarta parte*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. DISTRIBUTIVES are used

1) To show the number of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos denarios acciperunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence:

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *duo castra*, two camps. Here for *singuli* and *terni*, *uni* and *trini* are used: *unae litterae*, one letter; *trinae litterae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *duo scyphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *duo hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for duodēcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordēcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. unus	unū	unū	unus	unae	unae	unae
G. unius	unius	unius	unius	unarum	unarum	unarum
D. uni	uni	uni	uni	unae	unae	unae
A. unum	unum	unum	unum	unae	unae	unae
V. unū	unū	unū	unū	unae	unae	unae
A. unō	unō	unō;	unī	unae	unae	unae.

Duo, *two*.

Tres, *three*.

N. duo	duo	duo	tres, m. and f.	tri, n.
G. duorum	duorum	duorum ²	trium	trium

¹ Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia*: *centies centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

² *Duorum* and *duorum* are sometimes shortened to *duum*.

D. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	trībūs	trībūs
A. duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, trīs	triā
V. duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
A. duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs.	trībūs	trībūs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae litterae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plurimi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bōnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable: as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (63); *millia*,¹ *millium*, *millibus*.

With the substantive *Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hōminum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trēcenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bōnus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ūm* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *binūm* for *binōrum*.

180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	9.	IX.	17.	XVII.
2.	II.	10.	X.	18.	XVIII.
3.	III.	11.	XI.	19.	XIX.
4.	IV.	12.	XII.	20.	XX.
5.	V.	13.	XIII.	21.	XXI.
6.	VI.	14.	XIV.	22.	XXII.
7.	VII.	15.	XV.	30.	XXX.
8.	VIII.	16.	XVI.	40.	XL.

¹ This according to Corssen is the proper form, though the word is often written with one *l*: *millia*.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
50.	L.	200.	CC.	900.	DCCCC.
60.	LX.	300.	CCC.	1,000.	CID, <i>or</i> M.
70.	LXX.	400.	CCCC.	2,000.	CIDCID, <i>or</i> MM.
80.	LXXX.	500.	IO, <i>or</i> D.	10,000.	CCIDC.
90.	XC.	600.	DC.	100,000.	CCCIDC.
100.	C.	700.	DCC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIDC.
101.	CI.	800.	DCCC.		

1. LATIN NUMERAL SYMBOLS are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO *or* D = 500; CID *or* M = 1,000.¹

2. IN THE COMBINATION OF THESE SYMBOLS, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5 - 1); VI = 6 (5 + 1).

3. IN THE COMBINATION OF IO observe

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value tenfold: IO = 500; IOO = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IOOO = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sēmēl, <i>once</i>	11. undĕcies	17. septiesdĕcies
2. bis, <i>twice</i>	12. duōdĕcies	18. { duōdĕvicies
3. tēr, <i>three times</i>	13. { terdĕcies	{ octiesdĕcies
4. quārtēr	{ trēdĕcies	19. { undĕvicies
5. quinqvies	14. { quāterdĕcies	{ nōviesdĕcies
6. sexiēs	{ quattuordecies	20. vicies
7. septies	• 15. { quinqviesdĕcies	21. sēmēl et vicies
8. octies	{ quindecies	22. bis et vicies
9. nōvies	• 16. { sexiesdĕcies	30. tricies
10. dĕcies	{ sēdĕcies	40. quādrāgies

¹Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{\text{II}}$ = 2,000; $\overline{\text{V}}$ = 5,000.

50. quinquāgies	200. dūcenties	900. nōningenties ¹
60. sexāgies	300. trēcenties	1,000. millies ²
70. septuāgies	400. quādringenties	2,000. bis millies
80. octōgies	500. quingenties	10,000. decies millies
90. nōnāgies	600. sexcenties	100,000. centies millies
100. centies	700. septingenties	1,000,000. millies millies
101. centies semel	800. octingenties	

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens, however, with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *ūm* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *primum*, *primo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ējō*, I; *tū*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tū*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quī*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quīs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

¹ Also written *nongenties*.

² *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

Ego, *I.* Tu, *thou.* Sui, *of himself, etc.*¹

SINGULAR.

N. ěgŏ	tŭ	
G. meĭ	tui	sui
D. mihi	tibi	sibi
A. mē	tē	sē
V.	tā	
A. mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

N. nōs	vōs	
G. nostrŭm }	vestrŭm }	sui
nostrī }	vestrī }	
D. nōbĭs	vōbĭs	sibĭ
A. nōs	vōs	sē
V.	vōs	
A. nōbĭs.	vōbĭs.	sē.

1. STEMS.—The stems in the Sing.² are *me, te, se*; in the Plur. *no, vo, so*.
2. The CASE-ENDINGS of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.
3. GENITIVE.—*Mci, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri*, are in form strictly Possessive Pronouns and are in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostri* and *vestri* have also become Plural. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* for *nostrŭm* and *vestrŭm* are also Possessives. See *meus, tuus, suus*, etc., 185.
4. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.—Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.
5. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.
6. EMPHATIC FORMS in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egŏmēt*, I myself; *tēmet*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tūtē* and *tutēmet*, for *tūmet*.
7. REDUPLICATED FORMS:—*Seē, tētē, mēmē*, for *se, te, me*.
8. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:—*Mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mī* for *mihi*; *mēd*, and *meptē* for *me*; *tēd* for *te*; *sēd* for *se*.
9. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcūm, tēcūm*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

¹ *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nom. is not used.

² Except in the Nom. *Tu* is related to *te*, but *ego* is an entirely independent form.

mešs, ā, ūm, *my*; nostēr, trā, trūm, *our*;
tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
suus, a, um, *his, her, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Voc. Sing. Masc. generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

2. Emphatic forms in *ptē* and *mēt* occur: *suapte, suāmet*.

3. Other possessives are: (1) *cujus, a, um*,¹ whose, and *cujus, a, um*,² whose? declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrās*, G. *ātis*, of our country, *vestrās*, G. *ātis*, of your country, and *cujās*,¹ G. *ātis*, of whose country, declined as adjectives of Decl. III.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, istē, illē, is, ipsē, idem.

They are declined as follows :

I. Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G. hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
D. huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A. hunc	hanc	hōc ³	hōs	hās	haec
A. hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

II. Istē, that, that of yours. See 450.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. istē	istā	istūd	istī	istae	istā
G. istīūs	istīūs	istīūs	istōrūm	istārūm	istōrūm
D. istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
A. istūm	istām	istūd ³	istōs	istās	istā
A. istō	istā	istō;	istīs	istīs	istīs.

III. Illē, he or that, is declined like istē.

¹ From the relative *qui, cujus*. See 187.

² From the interrogative *quis, cujus*. See 188.

³ The Vocate is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> is	eā	īd	eī, īi	cae	eā
<i>G.</i> ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
<i>D.</i> eī	eī	eī	eīa, īīa	eīa, īīa	eīa, īīa
<i>A.</i> eūm	eām	īd ¹	eōs	eās	eā
<i>A.</i> eō	eā	eō;	eīa, īīa	eīa, īīa	eīa, īīa

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> ipsē	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
<i>G.</i> ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
<i>D.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīa	ipsīa	ipsīa
<i>A.</i> ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>A.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsīa	ipsīa	ipsīa

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> idēm	eādēm	īdēm	{ eīdēm ¹ īīdēm	caedēm	eādēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>D.</i> eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	{ eīsdēm īīsdēm	eīsdēm	eīsdēm ²
<i>A.</i> eundēm	eandēm	īdēm	eosdēm	easdēm	eādēm
<i>A.</i> eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm;	{ eīsdēm īīsdēm	eīsdēm	eīsdēm ²

1. The STEMS are as follows:

1) Of *HIC*—*ho, ha*.³

2) Of *ISTE* and *ILLE*, for *istus* and *illus*—*isto, ista*, and *illo, illa*.

3) Of *IS*—*i, eo, ea*.

4) Of *IPSE*, for *ipsus*—*ipso, ipsa*.

5) *IDEM*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idēm* to *īdēm* and *īīdēm* to *īdēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Eīdēm* and *eīsdēm* are the approved forms, but *īīdēm* and *īīsdēm* are retained in many editions. *īīdēm* and *īīsdēm* are in poetry dissyllables, and are often written *īdem* and *īsdem*.

³ By the addition of *i* in certain cases, *ho* and *ha* become *hī* and *hā*, as in *hī-c* and *hā-c*.

2. **HIC**, for *hi-ce*, is compounded with the demonstrative particle *cē*, meaning *here*. The forms in *c* have dropped *e*, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But *ce* is often retained for emphasis; *hīce*, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). *Ce*, changed to *ci*, is generally retained before the interrogative *ne*: *hicne*, *hoscine*.

3. **ILLIC AND ISTIC**.—The particle *ce*, generally shortened to *c*, except after *s*, is sometimes appended to *ille* and *iste*: *illic* for *ille*, *illac* for *illa*, *illoc* or *illuc* for *illud*, *illiusce*, etc.

4. **ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:**

1) Of **HIC**: *hisce* for *hice*, *hi*; *haec* for *hae*.

2) Of **ISTE** and **ILLE**: forms in *i*, *ae*, *i* for *ius* and *i* in the Gen. and Dat.: *illi* for *illius*, *istae* for *istius* or *isti*; also forms from *ollus* for *ille*: *olli*, *olla*, *ollae*, etc.

3) Of **IS**: *ēi*,¹ *cae*, *ēi*,¹ Dat. for *ei*; *ibūs*, *ēabūs*, *ibūs*, for *eis*.

4) Of **IPSE**, compounded of *is* and *pse* (*is-pse* = *ipse*); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse*, *campse*, Abl. *eopse*, *capse*; with *re*: *re capse*, *reapse* for *re ipsa*, in reality; also *ipsus*, *a*, *um*, etc., for *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

5) **SYNOCATED FORMS**, compounded of *ecce* or *en*, *lo*, *see*, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is*; *ecceum* for *ecce eum*; *ecceōs* for *ecce eos*; *illum* for *en illum*; *ellam* for *en illam*.

5. **DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES**: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tōt*, so many; *tōtus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tōt* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mōdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind), is often used: *hujusmōdi*, *ejusmōdi*, of this kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. qui	quae	quōd	qui	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quōd ²	quōs	quās	quae
A. quō	quā	quō;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

1. **STEMS**.—The stem is *quo*, *qua*.³

¹ Sometimes *ei* as a diphthong.

² The Vocative is wanting. See 186, I. Foot-note.

³ *Quo* becomes *co*, *cu* in *cuius* and *cui*. *Qui* and *quae* are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hi* and *hae* in *hi-c* and *hae-c* from *ho* and *ha*.

2. ANCIENT and RARE FORMS: *quojus* and *quoī* for *cujus* and *cui*; *qui* for *quo*, *qua*; *quis* (*queis*) for *quibus*.

3. *Cum*, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

4. *QUICUMQUE* and *QUISQUIS*, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicumque* (*quicunque*) is declined like *qui*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quicquid*.

5. The parts of *Quicumque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *qua re cumque*.

6. RELATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualicumquē*, etc.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujusmōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscumquemōdi*, *cuiusmōdi* (for *cujuscujusmōdi*), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *quī* with their compounds.

I. *Quis*, *who*, *which*, *what*?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. quis</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G. cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>	<i>quārūm</i>	<i>quōrūm</i>
<i>D. cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>
<i>A. quē</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quid</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A. quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i> ;	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i>	<i>quibūs</i> .

II. *Quī*, *which*, *what*? is declined like the *relative qui*.

1. *QUIS* is generally used substantively, and *QUI*, adjectively.

2. STEM.—From the stem, *quo*, *qua*, are formed,—(1) The relative *qui*,—(2) The interrogatives *quis* and *quī*,—(3) The indefinites *quis* and *quī*.

3. *QUIS* and *QUEM* are sometimes feminine. *QUI*, for *quo*, *qua*, occurs in the sense of *how*? The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative. See 187, 2.

4. COMPOUNDS of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quinam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

5. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 151.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite person or things. The most important are

Quis and *quī*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *quī*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But

1. After *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *nūm*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *quā*: *sī quae*, *sī quā*.

191. From *quis* and *quī* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

<i>aliquis</i> , <i>aliquā</i> , <i>aliquid</i>	or <i>aliquod</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quispiam</i> , <i>quaepiam</i> , <i>quidpiam</i> ¹	or <i>quodpiam</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidam</i> , <i>quaedam</i> , <i>quiddam</i>	or <i>quoddam</i> ,	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisquam</i> , <i>quaequam</i> , <i>quidquam</i> ¹		<i>any one.</i>

II. *The General Indefinites*:

<i>quisque</i> , <i>quaeque</i> , <i>quidque</i> ¹	or <i>quodque</i> ,	<i>every, every one.</i>
<i>quivis</i> , <i>quaevis</i> , <i>quidvis</i>	or <i>quodvis</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>quilibet</i> , <i>quaelibet</i> , <i>quidlibet</i>	or <i>quodlibet</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>

1. These compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *quī*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2. *Aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliqui* for *aliquis* occurs.

3. *Quidam* may change *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

4. *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5. *Unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

¹ Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam*, *quicquam*, *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes :

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action : *servum verberāt*, he beats the slave.¹

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object : *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices :

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,²—which represents the subject as acting or existing : *pater filiū amat*, the father loves his son ; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing : *filius ā patre amatur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 801, 1.

2. DEPONENT VERBS³ are Passive in form, but not in sense : *loquor*, to speak. But see 225.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods⁴ are either Definite or Indefinite :

I. The DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the Finite Verb ; they are :

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact ; *legit*, he is reading ; *legitne*, is he reading ?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may, can*, etc. : *legat*, he may read, let him read.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *verberat*, beats : beats (what?) the slave.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

³ So called from *dēpono*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

But the Subjunctive may be variously translated, as we shall see in the Syntax.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕgĕ*, read thou.

II. The INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives ; they are :

1. THE INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number : *lĕgĕrĕ*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING : *amandī*, of loving ; *amandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular* : *amātūm*, to love, for loving ; *amātū*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future—*amans*, loving ; *amaturūs*, about to love ;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect—*amātūs*, loved, and the Gerundive¹—*amandūs*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses :

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION :

1. Present : *amō*, I love.
2. Imperfect : *amābām*, I was loving.
3. Future : *amābō*, I shall love.

III. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amāverām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amāverō*, I shall have loved.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **PRESENT PERFECT** and **HISTORICAL PERFECT**.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **PRINCIPAL** and **HISTORICAL**.—Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*:—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*:—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **TENSES WANTING**.—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

199. **NUMBERS** and **PERSONS**.—There are two numbers, **SINGULAR** and **PLURAL**,¹ and three persons, **FIRST**, **SECOND**, and **THIRD**.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	ēre,	ere,	ire.

201. **STEM** and **PRINCIPAL PARTS**.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.²

202. The **ENTIRE CONJUGATION** of any regular verb may be readily formed from the *Principal Parts* by means of the proper endings.³

203. **SUM**, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in Nouns. See 44.

² For treatment of stems, see 249-257.

³ In the *Paradigms* of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the *Principal Parts* and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. *Sūm, I am.*—STEMS, *ēs, fu.*¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
*sūm,*Pres. Inf.
*essē,*Perf. Ind.
*fuī,*Supine.
—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>sūm,</i> ²	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are,</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art,</i> ³	<i>estīs,</i>	<i>you are,</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

<i>ērām,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>erātīs,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

<i>ērō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>	<i>ērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<i>erīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<i>erītīs,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

<i>fuī,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>fuīmūs,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>
<i>fuistī,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>fuistīs,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>
<i>fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>	<i>fuērunt,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>
		<i>fuērē,</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

<i>fuērām,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuērātīs,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>
<i>fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>	<i>fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

<i>fuērō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fuērītīs,</i>	<i>you will have been,</i>
<i>fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>	<i>fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sūm* has two Verb-Stems, while regular verbs have only one.² *Sūm* is for *ēsūm*, *ērām* for *ēsām*. Whenever *s* of the stem *ēs* comes between two vowels, *s* is dropped, as in *sūm*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *ērām*, *ērō*. See 35.³ Or *you are ; thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sīm,	<i>I may be,¹</i>	sīmūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sīs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
sīt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estē,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,²</i>	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
	<i>estō, he shall be ;³</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be.</i>	
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>	
FUT. fūtūrus essē, ³	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fūtūrus, ³ <i>about to be.</i>

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es*; all others from the stem *fu*.

2. RARE FORMS:—*fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrent, fōrē, for essem, esses, esset, essent, futūrus esse ; sēm siēs, siēt, sient, or fuām, fuās, fuāt, fuant, for sim, sis, sit, sint.*

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, I. 2.

² The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let*: *be thou ; let him be.*

³ *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, *I love*—STEM, āma.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmāre,	āmāvi,	āmātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.

āmō,	<i>I love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>

PLURAL.

āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmātis,	<i>you love,</i>
āmant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>
āmābas,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>

āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>
āmābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
āmābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>

āmābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
āmāvistī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>

āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>

āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall, or will have loved.

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
āmāvēris,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
āmāvērit,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>

āmāvērimūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvēritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

¹ The final *a* of the stem disappears in *amo* for *ama-o*, *amem*, *ames*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-ir*, etc. See 32, II. 1, 3; 32, II. 2.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Prin - **āmēma,** *I may love,***āmēs,** *thou mayst love,***āmēt,** *he may love ;***āmēmās,** *we may love,***āmētīs,** *you may love,***āment,** *they may love.*

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.***āmārēm,** *I might love,***āmārēs,** *thou mightst love,***āmārēt,** *he might love ;***āmārēmās,** *we might love,***āmārētīs,** *you might love,***āmārent,** *they might love.*

PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.**Prin* - **āmāvērim,** *I may have loved,***āmāvēris,** *thou mayst have loved,***āmāvērit,** *he may have loved ;***āmāvērimās,** *we may have loved,***āmāvēritīs,** *you may have loved,***āmāvērint,** *they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.***āmāvissēm,** *I might have loved,***āmāvissēs,** *thou mightst have**loved,***āmāvissēt,** *he might have loved ;***āmāvissēmās,** *we might have**loved,***āmāvissētīs,** *you might have loved,***āmāvissent,** *they might have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. āmā, *love thou ;***Fut. āmātō,** *thou shalt love,***āmātō,** *he shall love ;***āmātē,** *love ye.***āmātētē,** *ye shall love,***āmāntō,** *they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. āmārē, *to love.***Perf. āmāvissē,** *to have loved.***Fut. āmātūrūs¹ eṣṣē,** *to be*
about to love.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. āmans,¹ *loving.***Fut. āmātūrūs,²** *about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen. āmandī, *of loving,***Dat. āmandō,** *for loving,***Acc. āmandūm,** *loving,***Abl. āmandō,** *by loving.*

SUPINE.

Acc. āmātūm, *to love,***Abl. āmātū,** *to love, be loved.*¹ For declension, see 157.² Decline like *bonus*, 148.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, *I am loved.*—STEM, *äma.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
ämör,Pres. Inf.
ämäri,Perf. Ind.
ämätüs süm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ämör
ämäris, or rē
ämätür;

PLURAL.

ämämür
ämämini
ämantür.

IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.***ämäbär**
ämäbäris, or rē
ämäbatür;**ämäbämür**
ämäbämini
ämäbantür.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.***ämäbör**
ämäböris, or rē
ämäbitür;**ämäbimür**
ämäbimini
ämäbuntür.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.***ämätüs süm¹**
ämätüs es
ämätüs est;**ämätü sümüs**
ämätü estis
ämätü sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.***ämätüs eram¹**
ämätüs eras
ämätüs erat;**ämätü eramüs**
ämätü eratüs
ämätü erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.***ämätüs erō¹**
ämätüs eris
ämätüs erit;**ämätü erimüs**
ämätü eritis
ämätü erunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*: *amatus fui* for *amatus sum*. So *fuëram, fuëras, etc.*, for *ëram; etc.*: also *fuëro, etc.*, for *ëro, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămăr	ămămur
ămăris, or ră	ămămim
ămătur;	ămăntur.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămărer	ămăremur
ămăreris or ră	ămăremim
ămăretur;	ămărentur.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămătus sim ¹	ămăti simus
ămătus sis	ămăti sitis
ămătus sit;	ămăti sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămătus esset ¹	ămăti essemus
ămătus esses	ămăti essetis
ămătus esset;	ămăti essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRÆ. ămăre, be thou loved;	ămămim, be ye loved.
FUT. ămător, thou shalt be loved, ămător, he shall be loved;	ămăntor, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRÆ. ămări, to be loved.	PERF. ămătus, having been loved.
PERF. ămătus esse, ¹ to have been loved.	GER. ² ămăndus, to be loved, deserving to be loved.
FUT. ămătura iri, to be about to be loved.	

¹ *Fuerim, fueris, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sim, sis, etc.*—So also *fuissem, fuisses, etc.*, for *essem, esses, etc.*; rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.

² GER.=Gerundive. See 196, 4.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneō, *I advise*.—STEM, *mōne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
mōneō,Pres. Inf.
mōnērē,Perf. Ind.
mōnuī,Supine.
mōnitūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneō
mōnēs
mōnēt;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūs
mōnētīs
mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*mōnēbām
mōnēbās
mōnēbāt;mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbātīs
mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*mōnēbō
mōnēbīs
mōnēbīt;mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbītīs
mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*mōnuī
mōnuistī
mōnuīt;mōnuīmūs
mōnuistīs
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*mōnuērām
mōnuērās
mōnuērāt;mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērātīs
mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*mōnuērō
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt;mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītīs
mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneām	mōneāmūs
mōneās	mōneātīs
mōneāt;	mōneant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mōnērēm	mōnērēmūs
mōnērēs	mōnērētīs
mōnērēt;	mōnērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mōnuērīm	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs	mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt;	mōnuērint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mōnuissēm	mōnuissēmūs
mōnuissēs	mōnuissētīs
mōnuissēt;	mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, advise thou;	mōnētē, advise ye.
FUT. mōnētō, thou shalt advise, mōnētō, he shall advise;	mōnētōtē, ye shall advise, mōnentō, they shall advise.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, to advise.
PERF. mōnuissē, to have advised.
FUT. mōnītūrūs essē, to be about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnens, advising.
FUT. mōnītūrūs, about to advise.

GERUND.

Gen. mōnendī, of advising.
Dat. mōnendō, for advising.
Acc. mōnendūm, advising.
Abi. mōnendō, by advising.

SUPINE.

Acc. mōnītūm, to advise.
Abi. mōnītū, to advise, be advised.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneōr, *I am advised.*—STEM, mōne.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
mōneōr,Pres. Inf.
mōnēri,Perf. Ind.
mōnītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneōr
mōnēris, or rē
mōnētūr;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūr
mōnēmīni
mōnentūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*mōnēbār
mōnēbaris, or rē
mōnēbātūr;mōnēbāmūr
mōnēbāmīni
mōnēbantūr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*mōnēbōr
mōnēbōris, or rē
mōnēbitūr;mōnēbīmūr
mōnēbīmīni
mōnēbuntūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*mōnītūs sūm¹
mōnītūs es
mōnītūs est;mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītī estis
mōnītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*mōnītūs ērām¹
mōnītūs ēras
mōnītūs ērāt;mōnītī ērāmūs
mōnītī ērātis
mōnītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*mōnītūs ērō¹
mōnītūs ēris
mōnītūs ērit;mōnītī ērimūs
mōnītī ēritis
mōnītī ērant.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneār
mōneāris, or rē
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr
mōneāminī
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērēris, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēminī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sis
mōnītūs sīt;

mōnītī simūs
mōnītī sitis
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētis
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised*; | mōnēminī, *be ye advised*.

FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised*,
mōnētōr, *he shall be advised*; | mōnentōr, *they shall be advised*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnēri, *to be advised*.
PERF. mōnītūs esse,¹ *to have been advised*.
FUT. mōnītūm iri, *to be about to be advised*.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mōnītūs, *advised*.
GER. mōnendūs, *to be advised, deserving to be advised*.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgō, *I rule*.—STEM, *rēg*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgēre,	rexī, ¹	rectūm. ¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgō
rēgis
rēgit;

PLURAL.

rēgimūs
rēgitis
rēgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rēgebām
rēgebās
rēgebāt;

rēgebāmūs
rēgebātis
rēgebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will rule.

rēgām
rēgēs
rēgēt;

rēgēmūs
rēgētis
rēgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or have ruled.

rexī
rexistī
rexīt;

reximūs
rexistis
rexērunt, or ērē.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexērām
rexērās
rexērāt;

rexērāmūs
rexērātis
rexērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have ruled.

rexerō
rexerīs
rexerit;

rexerimūs
rexeritis
rexerint.

¹ See 213, III. 1; 253, I. 1; 253, II. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgām	rēgāmūs
rēgās	rēgātis
rēgāt.	rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rēgērēm	rēgērēmūs
rēgērēs	rēgērētis
rēgērēt;	rēgerent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexērīm	rexērīmūs
rexērīs	rexērītis
rexērīt;	rexerint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm	rexissēmūs
rexissēs	rexissētis
rexissēt;	rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou ;	rēgītē, rule ye.
FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule,	rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,
rēgītō, he shall rule ;	rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.
PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.
FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgēs, ruling.
FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgēdi, of ruling,
Dat. rēgēdō, for ruling,
Acc. rēgēdūm, ruling,
Abl. rēgēdō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,
Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, *I am ruled.*—STEM, rēg.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
rēgōr,Pres. Inf.
rēgī,Perf. Ind.
rectūs¹ sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr
rēgēris, or rē
rēgitūr;

PLURAL.

rēgimūr
rēgimīni
rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*rēgebār
rēgebāris, or rē
rēgebatūr;rēgebāmūr
rēgebāminī
rēgebantūr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*rēgār
rēgēris, or rē
rēgētūr;rēgēmūr
rēgēminī
rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectūs sūm²
rectūs es
rectūs est;rectī sūmūs
rectī estīs
rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectūs ērām²
rectūs ērās
rectūs ērāt;rectī ērāmūs
rectī ērātīs
rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectūs ērō²
rectūs ēris
rectūs ērit;rectī ērimūs
rectī ēritīs
rectī ērant.¹ See 209, foot-notes.² See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmār
rēgārīs, or rē	rēgāmīnī
rēgātūr;	rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rēgērēr	rēgērēmār
rēgērērīs, or rē	rēgērēmīnī
rēgērētūr;	rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm ¹	rectī sīmūs
rectūs sis	rectī sitis
rectūs sit;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm ¹	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētis
rectūs essēt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, *be thou ruled;* ! rēgīmīnī, *be ye ruled.*FUT. rēgītōr, *thou shalt be ruled;*
rēgītōr, *he shall be ruled;* rēgantōr, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, <i>to be ruled.</i>	
PERF. rectūs essē, ¹ <i>to have been ruled.</i>	PERF. rectūs, <i>ruled.</i>
FUT. rectūm irī, <i>to be about to be ruled.</i>	GER. rēgendūs, <i>to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, *I hear*.—STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audire,	audivi,	audītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimūs
audis	auditis
audit;	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiebām	audiebāmūs
audiebās	audiebātis
audiebāt;	audiebant.

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

audiam	audiemūs
audies	audietis
audiet;	audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

audivi	audivimūs
audivisti	audivistis
audivit;	audiverunt, or erāt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audiverām	audiverāmūs
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverāt;	audiverant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have heard.

audiverō	audiverimūs
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverint;	audiverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiam
audias
audiat;

PLURAL.

audiamus
audiatis
audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audirem
audires
audiret;

audiremus
audiretis
audirent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audiverim
audiveris
audiverit;

audiverimus
audiveritis
audiverint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audivissem
audivisses
audivisset;

audivissemus
audivissetis
audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, *hear thou;*audite, *hear ye.*

FUT. audito, *thou shalt hear,*
audito, *he shall hear;*

audite, *ye shall hear,*
audite, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audire, *to hear.*PERF. audivisse, *to have heard.*

FUT. auditurus esse, *to be*
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audiens, *hearing.*FUT. auditurus, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen. audiendi, *of hearing.*Dat. audiendū, *for hearing.*Acc. audiendum, *hearing.*Abl. audiendū, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc. auditum, *to hear.*Abl. auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, *I am heard*.—STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiōr,Pres. Inf.
audiīrī,Perf. Ind.
auditūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiōr
audiīris, or rē
auditūr;

PLURAL.

audiimūr
audiimīni
audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*audiebār
audiebāris, or rē
audiebātūr;audiebāmūr
audiebāmīni
audiebantūr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*audiār
audiēris, or rē
audiētūr;audiēmūr
audiēmīni
audientūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*auditūs sūm¹
auditūs es
auditūs est;auditī sūmīs
auditī estīs
auditī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*auditūs ērām¹
auditūs ērās
auditūs ērāt;auditī ērāmīs
auditī ērātīs
auditī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*auditūs ērō¹
auditūs ēris
auditūs ērit;auditī ērīmīs
auditī ēritīs
auditī ērant.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.

audīār
audīārīs, or rē
audīātūr;

PLURAL.

audīamūr
audīamīnī
audīantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

audīrēr
audīrērīs, or rē
audīrētūr;

audīrēmūr
audīrēmīnī
audīrentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītūs sīm¹
audītūs sīs
audītūs sīt;

audītī sīmīs
audītī sītīs
audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

audītūs essēm¹
audītūs essēs
audītūs essēt;

audītī essēmīs
audītī essētīs
audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audīrē, be thou heard; | audīamīnī, be ye heard.

FUT. audītōr, thou shalt be heard,
audītōr, he shall be heard; | audīantōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audīrī, to be heard.
PERF. audītūs essē,¹ to have been
heard.
FUT. audītūm irī, to be about
to be heard.

PERF. audītūs, heard.
GER. audiendūs, to be heard,
deserving to be heard.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

213. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including final *a*, *e* or *i*, of the stem :¹

I.	o,	äre,	ävi,	ätum.
II.	1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	äre,	ävi,	ätum.
II.	2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	äre,	ui,	itum.
III.	1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	äre,	si,	tum.
III.	2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	äre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	ire,	ivi,	itum.

EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	ämäre,	amävi,	amätum,	to love.
II.	1. Dēleo,	deläre,	delävi,	delätum,	to destroy.
	2. Mōneo,	monäre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
III.	1. Carpo,	carpäre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
	2. Acuo,	äcuäre,	acui,	acütum,	to sharpen.
IV.	Audio,	audire,	audiui,	auditum,	to hear.

214. COMPOUNDS.—Compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

I. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *e* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the *e* :²

Rēgo,	regäre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Dirigo,	dirigäre,	direxi,	directum,	to direct.

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the *e* :²

Tēneo,	tenäre,	tenui,	tentum,	to hold.
Dētineo,	detinäre,	detinui,	detentum,	to detain.

II. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *a* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes *e*,² sometimes *a* :

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum* with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *vi* and *itum* are derived: thus the full forms in *mōneo* would be *monēvi*, *monētum*. By dropping *e* in *monēvi*, and by changing the consonant *v* into its corresponding vowel *u*, we have *monui*. So by weakening *ē* into *i* in *monētum*, we have *monitum*.

² The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 28, 2.

Cāpio,	capere,	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
Ac-cīpio,	accipere,	accēpi,	acceptum,	to accept.

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains *i* and the Supine takes *e*:¹

Rāpio,	rapere,	rapui,	raptum,	to seize.
Di-rīpio,	diripere,	diripui,	direptum,	to tear asunder.

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

215. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems:

I. The **PRESENT SYSTEM**, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.

2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.

3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.

4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.

5. The *Present Active Participle*.

6. The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the ending *rē* of the Active or *ri* of the Passive in Conj. I. II. and IV. and *ērē* of the Active or *i* of the Passive in Conj. III.: *āmārē*, present stem *AMA*; *mōnērē*, *MONē*; *rēgērē*, *REG*; *audirē*, *AUDI*.

II. The **PERFECT SYSTEM**, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.

2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.

3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*: *amāvī*, perfect stem *AMAV*; *monuī*, *MONU*.

III. The **SUPINE SYSTEM**, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *ūm* and *ū*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.

2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the for-

¹ The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 23, 2.

mer of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem *AMAT*; *monitum*, *MONIT*.

216. These three Systems of Forms are seen in the following Synopsis of Conjugation.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

217. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmō, *āmāre*, *āmāvī*, *āmātūm*.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *āma*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> <i>āmō</i>	<i>āmēm</i>	<i>āmā</i>	<i>āmāre</i>	<i>āmans.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>āmābām</i>	<i>āmārēm</i>			
<i>Fut.</i> <i>āmābō</i>		<i>āmātō</i>		

Gerund, *āmandī*, *dō*, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāv*.

<i>Perf.</i> <i>āmāvī</i>	<i>āmāvērīm</i>		<i>āmāvissē.</i>	
<i>Plup.</i> <i>āmāvērām</i>	<i>āmāvissēm</i>			
<i>F.P.</i> <i>āmāvērō</i>				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāt*.

Fut. | *āmātūrūs esse* | *āmātūrūs*.
Supine, *āmātūm*, *āmātū*.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmōr, *āmārī*, *āmātūs sūm*.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *āma*.

<i>Pres.</i> <i>āmōr</i>	<i>āmēr</i>	<i>āmāre</i>	<i>āmārī</i>	
<i>Imp.</i> <i>āmābār</i>	<i>āmārēr</i>			
<i>Fut.</i> <i>āmābōr</i>		<i>āmātōr</i>		

Gerundive, *āmandūs*.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāt.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> āmātūs sūm	āmātūs sīm		āmātūs essē	āmātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> āmātūs ērām	āmātūs essēm			
<i>P. P.</i> āmātūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			āmātūm iri	

218. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *mōne.*

<i>Pres.</i> mōneō	mōneām	mōnē	mōnērē	mōnena.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbō		mōnētō		

Gerund, mōnendi, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *mōnu.*

<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm		mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>P. P.</i> mōnuērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *mōnīt.*

<i>Fut.</i>			mōnītūrās essē	mōnītūrās.
-------------	--	--	----------------	------------

Supine, mōnītūm, mōnītū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneor, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *mōne.*

<i>Pres.</i> mōneor	mōneār	mōnērē	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbōr		mōnētōr		

Gerundive, mōnendū.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *mōnīt.*

<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sīm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ērām	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>P. P.</i> mōnītūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			mōnītūm iri	

219. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> rēgō	rēgām	rēgē	rēgērē	rēgens.
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgām		rēgītō		

*Gerund, rēgendī, dō, etc.*3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *rex*.

<i>Perf.</i> rexī	rexērīm		rexissē	
<i>Plup.</i> rexērām	rexissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rexērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect*.

<i>Fut.</i>			rectūrūs essē	rectūrūs.
-------------	--	--	---------------	-----------

Supine, rectūm, rectū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgōr, rēgī, rectūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg*.

<i>Pres.</i> rēgōr	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgī	
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgār		rēgītōr		

*Gerundive, rēgendūs.*3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect*.

<i>Perf.</i> rectūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
<i>Plup.</i> rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rectūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			rectūm irī	

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audirē, audīvī, auditūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	audiō	audiām	audi	audirē	audiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbām	audirēm			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiām		auditō		

Gerund, audiendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *audiv*.

<i>Perf.</i>	audivī	audivērīm		audivissē	
<i>Plup.</i>	audivērām	audivissēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	audivērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			audītūrūs essē	audītūrūs.
-------------	--	--	----------------	------------

Supine, audītūm, audītū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr, audīrī, audītūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiōr	audiār	audirē	audirī	
<i>Imp.</i>	audiēbār	audirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiār		audītōr		

Gerundive, audiendūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

<i>Perf.</i>	audītūs sūm	audītūs sīm		audītūs essē	audītūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	audītūs ērām	audītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	audītūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>				audītūm irī	

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in *io*, *ior*, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are

1. The following with their compounds :

Cūpio, to take; *cūpio*, to desire; *fācio*, to make; *fōdio*, to dig; *fūgio*, to flee; *jācio*, to throw; *pārio*, to bear; *quātio*, to shake; *rāpio*, to seize; *sāpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lūcio*, to entice, and *spēcio*, to look ; *allicio*, *ēlicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc. ; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs : *grādior*, to go ; *mōrior*, to die ; *pātior*, to suffer. See 225.

222. ACTIVE VOICE.

Cāpio, *I take*.—STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>cāpiō</i> ,	<i>cāpērē</i> ,	<i>cēpl</i> ,	<i>captūm</i> .

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>cāpiō</i> , <i>cāpis</i> , <i>cāpīt</i> ;	<i>cāplmūs</i> , <i>cāplūs</i> , <i>cāpiunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>cāpiebām</i> , <i>-iebās</i> , <i>-iebāt</i> ;	<i>cāpiebāmūs</i> , <i>-iebatūs</i> , <i>-iebant</i> .
FUT.	<i>cāpiām</i> , <i>-iēs</i> , <i>-iēt</i> ;	<i>cāpiēmūs</i> , <i>-iētūs</i> , <i>-ient</i> .
PERF.	<i>cēpl</i> , <i>-istī</i> , <i>-it</i> ;	<i>cēplmūs</i> , <i>-istūs</i> , <i>-erunt</i> , or <i>ērē</i> .
PLUP.	<i>cēpērām</i> , <i>-ērās</i> , <i>-ērāt</i> ;	<i>cēpērāmūs</i> , <i>-ērātūs</i> , <i>-erant</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>cēpērō</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , <i>ērīt</i> ;	<i>cēpērīmūs</i> , <i>-ērītūs</i> , <i>-erint</i> .

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>cāpiām</i> , <i>-ias</i> , <i>-iāt</i> ;	<i>cāpiāmūs</i> , <i>-iatūs</i> , <i>-iant</i> .
IMP.	<i>cāpērēm</i> , <i>-ērēs</i> , <i>-ērēt</i> ;	<i>cāpērēmūs</i> , <i>-erētūs</i> , <i>-erent</i> .
PERF.	<i>cēpērīm</i> , <i>-ērīs</i> , <i>ērīt</i> ;	<i>cēpērīmūs</i> , <i>-ērītūs</i> , <i>erint</i> .
PLUP.	<i>cēpissēm</i> , <i>-issēs</i> , <i>-issēt</i> ;	<i>cēpissēmūs</i> , <i>-issētūs</i> , <i>-issent</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>cāpē</i> ;	<i>cāplātē</i> .
FUT.	<i>cāplōtē</i> ,	<i>cāplōtētē</i> ,
	<i>cāplōtē</i> ;	<i>cāpiuntōtē</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>cāpērē</i> .
PERF.	<i>cēpissē</i> .
FUT.	<i>captūrūs essē</i> .

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	<i>cāpiens</i> .
FUT.	<i>captūrūs</i> .

GERUND.

Gen.	<i>cāpiendī</i> .
Dat.	<i>cāpiendō</i> .
Acc.	<i>cāpiendūm</i> .
Abl.	<i>cāpiendō</i> .

SUPINE.

Acc.	<i>captūm</i> .
Abl.	<i>captū</i> .

223. PASSIVE VOICE.

Căpior, *I am taken*.—STEM, *căp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiör,	căpi,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	căpiör, căpēria, căpiütür;	căpiümür, căpiümi, căpiuntür.
IMP.	căpiebăr, -iebăria, -iebätür;	căpiebamür, -iebämüni, -iebantür.
FUT.	căpiär, -iēria, -iētür;	căpiēmür, -iēmüni, -ientür.
PERF.	captūs sūm, ēa, est;	capti sūmūs, estis, sunt.
PLUP.	captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt;	capti ērāmūs, ērātis, ērant.
FUT. PERF.	captūs ērō, ēris, ērit;	capti ērimūs, ēritis, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	căpiär, -iäria, -iätür;	căpiämür, -iämüni, -iantür.
IMP.	căpērēr, -ērēria, -ērētür;	căpērēmür, -ērēmüni, -ērentür.
PERF.	captūs sīm, sis, sīt;	capti sīmūs, sitis, sint.
PLUP.	captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	capti essēmūs, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	căpērē;	căpiümi.
FUT.	căpiütür,	căpiuntür.
	căpiötür;	

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	căpi.	
PERF.	captūs essē.	PERF. captūs.
FUT.	captüm iri.	GER. căpiendūs.

224. SYNOPSIS.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

căpiö, căpērē, căpi, captüm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *căpi*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. căpiö	căpiäm	căpē	căpērē	căpiens.
Imp. căpiebām	căpērēm			
Fut. căpiäm		căpiöt		

Gerund, căpiendi, dö, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *cēp.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpī	cēpērīm		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt.*

<i>Fut.</i>			captūrūs essē	captūrūs.
			<i>Supine, captūm, captū.</i>	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiōr, cāpī, captūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *cāpi.*

<i>Pres.</i> cāpiōr	cāpiār	cāpērē	cāpī	
<i>Imp.</i> cāpiēbār	cāpērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> cāpiār		cāpītōr		

*Gerundive, cāpiendūs.*3. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt.*

<i>Perf.</i> captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūs essē	captūs.
<i>Plup.</i> captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> captūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			captūm irī	

DEPONENT VERBS.

225. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

• FIRST CONJUGATION.

226. Hortor, *I exhort.*

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortōr, hortārī, hortātūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *horta*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> hortō ¹	hortē	hortāre	hortārī	hortans.
<i>Imp.</i> hortābār	hortārēr			
<i>Fut.</i> hortābōr		hortātōr		
		<i>Gerund,</i> hortandī	<i>Gerundive,</i> hortandūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *hortāt*.

<i>Perf.</i> hortātūs sūm	hortātūs sīm		hortātūs essē	hortātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> hortātūs ērām	hortātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> hortātūs ērō			hortātūrūs essē	hortātūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine,</i> hortātūm, hortātū.				

SECOND CONJUGATION.

227. Vēreor, *I fear*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vēreōr, vērerī, vēritūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *vēre*.

<i>Pres.</i> vēreōr	vēreār	vērērē	vērērī	vērēns.
<i>Imp.</i> vērebār	vērērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> vērebōr		vērētōr		
		<i>Gerund,</i> vērendī	<i>Gerundive,</i> vērendūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *vērīt*.

<i>Perf.</i> vēritūs sūm	vērītūs sīm		vērītūs essē	vērītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> vēritūs ērām	vērītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> vēritūs ērō			vērītūrūs essē	vērītūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine,</i> vēritūm, vēritū.				

THIRD CONJUGATION.

228. Sēquor, *I follow*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sēquōr, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm.

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers : *hortōr, hortāris, hortātūr, hortāmūr, hortāmini, hortantūr*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort, I was exhorting, etc.*, except the *Gerundives*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted, to be exhorted*. From the passive force the *Gerundives* cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 1.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *sĕqu*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> sĕquōr	sĕquār	sĕquērē	sĕqui	sĕquens.
<i>Imp.</i> sĕquēbār	sĕquērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> sĕquār		sĕquītōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , sĕquendī	<i>Gerundive</i> , sĕquendūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *sĕcūt*.

<i>Perf.</i> sĕcūtūs sūm	sĕcūtūs sīm		sĕcūtūs essē	sĕcūtūs.
<i>Plup.</i> sĕcūtūs ērām	sĕcūtūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> sĕcūtūs ērō			sĕcūtūrūs essē	sĕcūtūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine</i> , sĕcūtūm, sĕcūtū.				

229. Pătior, *I suffer*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

pătior, pătī, passūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *pătī*.

<i>Pres.</i> pătior	pătīār	pătērē	pătī	pătīens.
<i>Imp.</i> pătīēbār	pătērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> pătīār		pătītōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , pătīendī	<i>Gerundive</i> , pătīendūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *pass*.

<i>Perf.</i> passūs sūm	passūs sīm		passūs essē	passūs.
<i>Plup.</i> passūs ērām	passūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> passūs ērō			passūrūs essē	passūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine</i> , passūm, passū.				

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

230. Blandior, *I flatter*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandior, blandīrī, blandītūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *blandī*.

<i>Pres.</i> blandior	blandīār	blandīrē	blandīrī	blandīens.
<i>Imp.</i> blandīēbār	blandīrēr			
<i>Fut.</i> blandīār		blandī- tōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , blandīendī	<i>Gerundive</i> , blandīendūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *blandit*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> blanditūs sūm	blanditūs sīm		blanditūs essē	blanditūs.
<i>Plup.</i> blanditūs ērām	blanditūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> blanditūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			blanditūrus essē	blanditūrus.

Supine, blanditūm, blanditā.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action :

Amatūrus sum, I am about to love.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amatūrus sūm ¹	amatūrus sīm	amatūrus essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	amatūrus ērām	amatūrus essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	amatūrus ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amatūrus fui	amatūrus fuērīm	amatūrus fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	amatūrus fuērām	amatūrus fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amatūrus fuērō ¹		

232. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

Amandus sum, I must be loved.²

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	amandūs sūm	amandūs sīm	amandūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	amandūs ērām	amandūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	amandūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amandūs fui	amandūs fuērīm	amandūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	amandūs fuērām	amandūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amandūs fuērō		

233. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*; but as the *Pres. Part.* with *sum* is equivalent to the *Pres. Ind.* (*amans est = amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the *Perf. Part.* with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, es, est*. The *Fut. Perf.* is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve (ought) to be loved*.

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in **āvi**, **ōvi**, **īvi**, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**. Thus

A-i and **a-e** become **ā**: *āmavisti* (amaisti), *amasti*; *amavēram* (amaeram), *amāram*; *amavisse* (amaisse), *amasse*.

E-i and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (neisti), *nesti*; *nevērunt* (neerunt), *nērunt*.

I-i becomes **i**: *audivisti* (audiisti), *audisti*; *audivissem* (audiissem), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audivi*, *audii*, *audiit*, *audieram*; *audivisti*, *audiisti* or *audisti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfects of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvisti*, *nostī*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, or *is*: *scripsisti*, *scripsisti*; *dixisse*, *dixi*; *accessistis*, *accessistis*.

235. **Erē** for **ērunt**, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ere* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

236. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. **Dico**, **duo**, **fac**, and **fer**, for *dice*, *dūce*, *fāce*, and *fēre*, are the Imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dice*, *dūce*, and *fāce*, occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*: *confice*.

238. **Undus** and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dicundus*, from *dico*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

239. **ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS**.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. **ībam** for *iēbam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *sciām* for *sciēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. **ībo**, **ībor**, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servibo* for *serviam*; *oppēribor* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. **īm** for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *ēdīm*, *edis*, etc., for *ēdām*, *as*, etc.; *duīm* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sīm*, *vēlīm*, *nōlīm*, *mālīm* (204 and 293), *īm* is the common ending.

4. *asso*, *esso*, and *so*, in the Fut. Perf., and *assim*, *assim*, and *sim*, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III.: *fazo* (facso) for *fēctro*¹ (from *fācio*); *fazim* for *fēctrim*¹; *ausim* for *ausus sim* (for *ausērim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are: *lēvasso* for *levavēro*; *prohibesso* for *prohibuēro*; *capso* for *cēpero*; *azo* for *ēgēro*; *jusso* for *jussēro*; *occisit* for *occidērit*; *taxis* for *tēgēris*.

5. *to* and *mino* for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep.: *arbitrāto*, *arbitramino* for *arbitrātor*; *ūtunto* for *ūtuntor*.

6. *ier* for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin.: *āmariēr* for *amārī*; *videriēr* for *vidērī*.

240. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

I. PRESENT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

STEM,	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
IND. PRES.	<i>āmō</i> = <i>amao</i>	<i>mōneō</i>	<i>rēgō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
	<i>amās</i> ²	<i>monēs</i> ²	<i>regis</i>	<i>audis</i>
IMP.	<i>amābām</i>	<i>monēbām</i>	<i>regēbām</i>	<i>audiēbām</i>
	<i>amābās</i>	<i>monēbās</i>	<i>regēbās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
FUT.	<i>amābō</i>	<i>monēbō</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amābis</i>	<i>monēbis</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>audies</i>
SUB. PRES.	<i>amēm</i> = <i>amaim</i>	<i>moneām</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amēs</i>	<i>monēs</i>	<i>regās</i>	<i>audias</i>
IMP.	<i>amārēm</i>	<i>monērēm</i>	<i>regērēm</i>	<i>audirēm</i>
	<i>amārēs</i>	<i>monērēs</i>	<i>regērēs</i>	<i>audirēs</i>
IMP. PRES.	<i>amā</i>	<i>monē</i>	<i>regē</i>	<i>audi</i>
FUT.	<i>amātō</i>	<i>monētō</i>	<i>regitō</i>	<i>auditō</i>
INF. PRES.	<i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audirē</i>
PAB. PRES.	<i>amans</i>	<i>monens</i>	<i>regens</i>	<i>audiens</i>
GERUND,	<i>amandi</i> .	<i>monendi</i> .	<i>regendi</i> .	<i>audiendi</i> .

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PRES.	<i>amōr</i>	<i>moneōr</i>	<i>regōr</i>	<i>audiōr</i>
	<i>amāris</i> (rē)	<i>monēris</i> (rē)	<i>regēris</i> (rē)	<i>audiris</i> (rē)
IMP.	<i>amābār</i>	<i>monēbār</i>	<i>regēbār</i>	<i>audiēbār</i>
	<i>amābāris</i> (rē)	<i>monēbāris</i> (rē)	<i>regēbāris</i> (rē)	<i>audiēbāris</i> (rē)
FUT.	<i>amābōr</i>	<i>monēbōr</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amabēris</i> (rē)	<i>monebēris</i> (rē)	<i>regēris</i> (rē)	<i>audiēris</i> (rē)
SUB. PRES.	<i>amēr</i> = <i>amair</i>	<i>moneār</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amēris</i> (rē)	<i>moneāris</i> (rē)	<i>regāris</i> (rē)	<i>audiāris</i> (re)
IMP.	<i>amārēr</i>	<i>monērēr</i>	<i>regērēr</i>	<i>audirēr</i>
	<i>amarēris</i> (rē)	<i>monerēris</i> (rē)	<i>regerēris</i> (rē)	<i>audirēris</i> (rē)
IMP. PRES.	<i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audirē</i>
FUT.	<i>amātōr</i>	<i>monētōr</i>	<i>regitōr</i>	<i>auditōr</i>
INF. PRES.	<i>amārī</i>	<i>monērī</i>	<i>regī</i>	<i>audirī</i>
GER.	<i>amandūs</i> .	<i>monendūs</i> .	<i>regendūs</i> .	<i>audiendūs</i> .

¹ Remember that *r* in *ēro* and *ērim* was originally *s*. See 35, and foot-note 2, p. 70.

² In the same manner all the persons of both numbers may be compared.

II. PERFECT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
STEM,	<i>āmāv.</i>	<i>mōnu.</i>	<i>rex.</i>	<i>audīv.</i>
IND. PERF.	amāvī amavistī	monuī monuistī	rexi rexiſtī	audiī audivistī
PLUP.	amavērām amavērās	monuērām monuērās	rexērām rexērās	audivērām audivērās
F. PERF.	amavērō amavērīs	monuērō monuērīs	rexērō rexērīs	audivērō audivērīs
SUB. PERF.	amavērīm amavērīs	monuērīm monuērīs	rexērīm rexērīs	audivērīm audivērīs
PLUP.	amavissēm amavissēs	monuissēm monuissēs	rexissēm rexissēs	audivissēm audivissēs
INF. PERF.	amavissē.	monuissē.	rexissē.	audivissē.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

STEM,	<i>āmāt.</i>	<i>mōnūt.</i>	<i>rect.</i>	<i>audīt.</i>
INF. FUT.	amātūrūs essē	monītūrūs essē	rectūrūs essē	audītūrūs essē
PAR. FUT.	amatūrūs	monitūrūs	rectūrūs	auditūrūs
SUPINE,	amātūm.	monitūm.	rectūm.	auditūm.

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PERF.	amātūs sūm amātūs ēs	monītūs sūm monītūs ēs	rectūs sūm rectūs ēs	audītūs sūm audītūs ēs
PLUP.	amātūs ērām amātūs ērās	monītūs ērām monītūs ērās	rectūs ērām rectūs ērās	audītūs ērām audītūs ērās
F. PERF.	amātūs ērō amātūs ērīs	monītūs ērō monītūs ērīs	rectūs ērō rectūs ērīs	audītūs ērō audītūs ērīs
SUB. PERF.	amātūs sīm amātūs sis	monītūs sīm monītūs sis	rectūs sīm rectūs sis	audītūs sīm audītūs sis
PLUP.	amātūs essēm amātūs essēs	monītūs essēm monītūs essēs	rectūs essēm rectūs essēs	audītūs essēm audītūs essēs
INF. PERF.	amātūs essē	monītūs essē	rectūs essē	audītūs essē
FUT.	amātūm irī	monitūm irī	rectūm irī	auditūm irī
PAR. PERF.	amātūs.	monītūs.	rectūs.	audītūs.

1. From this Synopsis it will be seen :

1) That the Four Conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

2) That even these differences have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

3) That the Four Conjugations are thus only varieties of one general system of inflection.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements :

1. The TENSE-SIGN : *ba* in *āmā-bā-m*, *rēg-ā-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL : *a* in *mōne-ā-s*, *rēg-ā-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING : *s* in *mōne-ā-s*, *rēg-ā-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign : *āmā-s*.
So also the Future¹ in Conj. III. and IV.

243. The other tenses² have the following

TENSE-SIGNS.

IND.	IMP.	<i>ba :</i>	<i>āmā-bā-s :</i>	<i>rēg-ā-bā-s.</i>
	FUT.	<i>bi :</i>	<i>āmā-bī-s :</i>	<i>mōne-bī-s.</i>
	PLUP.	<i>ēra :</i>	<i>āmāv-ērā-s :</i>	<i>rex-ērā-s.</i>
	F. PERF.	<i>ēri :</i>	<i>āmāv-ērī-s :</i>	<i>audiv-ērī-s.</i>
SUBJ.	IMP.	<i>ēra :</i>	{ <i>rēg-ērē-s, for rēg-ēra-I-s.</i> ³ <i>āmā-rē-s, for āma-ēra-I-s.</i> ³	
	PERF.	<i>ēri :</i>	<i>rex-ērī-s :</i>	<i>audiv-ērī-s.</i>
	PLUP.	<i>issa :</i>	<i>rex-issē-s, for rex-issa-I-s.</i> ³	

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—*ā*, *ē*,⁴ or *ī*⁵—

¹ This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative. See foot-note 5 below.

² These are all compounded with the tenses of *sum* : Thus in *āmā-bām* and *āmā-bō*, the ending *bām* = *ērām* is the Imperfect from the stem *bhu*, the old form of *fu* in *fui*, and *bō* = *ērō* is the Future from the same stem. In *āmāv-ērām* and *āmāv-ērō*, the endings *ērām* and *ērō* are the Imperfect and Future of *sum* from the stem *es*. In *rēg-ērēm* the ending *ērēm* is for *ēsēm*, the ancient form of *essēm* ; in *rex-ērīm*, *ērīm* is for *ēsīm* = *sīm*, and in *rex-issēm*, *issēm* is for *essēm*.

³ See foot-note 5 below.

⁴ This *ē* comes from *a-ī*, of which the *ī* alone is the true Mood-Sign.

⁵ The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods,—the Subjunctive with the sign *d*, and the Optative with the sign *ī*, sometimes

before the Personal Endings : *mōne-ā-mūs*, *ām-ē-mūs*, *s-i-mūs*. But

1. This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and sometimes in the Perfect before *s*, *mūs* and *tis* : *mōneām*, *āmēt*, *ēt*, *fuērīs*, *āmāvērimūs*, *āmāvēritīs*.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings. See 247, 3.

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows :

	PERSON.	ACT.	PASS.	MEANING.
<i>Sing.</i> ¹	<i>First Pers.</i> ,	<i>m</i> ,	<i>r</i> ,	<i>I</i> .
	<i>Second</i> ,	<i>s</i> ,	<i>rīs</i> ,	<i>thou, you.</i>
	<i>Third</i> ,	<i>t</i> ,	<i>tūr</i> ,	<i>he, she, it.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ²	<i>First</i> ,	<i>mūs</i> ,	<i>mūr</i> ,	<i>we.</i>
	<i>Second</i> ,	<i>tīs</i> ,	<i>mīnī</i> , ³	<i>you.</i>
	<i>Third</i> ,	<i>nt</i> ,	<i>ntūr</i> ,	<i>they.</i>

contained in *ē* for *a-i*. Thus : Subjunctive, *mōne-ā-mūs*, *audi-ā-tīs* ; Optative, *s-i-mūs*, *rexēr-ī-tīs*, *ām-ē-mūs* for *ama-i-mūs*, *rēgēr-ē-s*, for *rēgēra-i-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mōne-ā-mūs*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *ām-ē-mūs*, an Optative form.

The 1st Pers. Sing. of Futures in *ām-rēgām*, *audiām*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *rēgēs*, *ēt*, etc., *audiēs*, *ēt*, etc., are in form Optatives.

¹ In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each, (1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, *I* ; *s*, thou, you ; *t*, he ; and (2) in the Passive two such stems—one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice : thus in the ending *tūr*, *t* (*tu*) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

² In the Plural the Endings contain each, (1) in the Active two pronominal stems : *mū-s* = *m* (*mu*) and *s*, *I* and you, i. e. we ; *tīs* = *t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tu*, thou) and *s*, = *s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e. you ; *nt* = *n* and *t*, he and he, i. e. they, and (2) in the Passive three such stems—the third denoting the Passive voice : thus in *ntūr*, *nt* (*ntu*) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

³ *Mīnī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (*μεινι*). *Amāmīnī*, originally *āmāmīnī estis*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estis* means *you have been loved*.

EXAMPLES.

āmābā-m,	amābā-r;	rēgō,	regō-r.
amābā-s,	amābā-ris;	regī-s,	regē-ris.
amābā-t,	amābā-tūr;	regī-t,	regī-tūr.
amabā-mūs,	amabā-mūr;	regī-mūs,	regī-mūr.
amabā-tis,	amabā-mīnī;	regī-tis,	regī-mīnī.
amāba-nt,	amaba-ntūr;	regu-nt,	regu-ntūr.

1. OMITTED.—The ending *m* is omitted in the Pres.,¹ Perf., and Fut. Perf. Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Fut. Ind. of Conj. I. and II. Accordingly in those forms the First Person ends in the connecting vowel *o*: *āmō*, *amābō*, *amāvērō*; except in the Perfect, where it ends in *ī*: *āmāvi*.

2. The Endings of the Perfect Act. are peculiar. They are the same as in *fuī*:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Pers.</i> ,	fu-ī; ²	fu-ī-mūs.
<i>Second</i> ,	fu-is-tī;	fu-is-tis.
<i>Third</i> ,	fu-ī-t;	fu-ērū-nt, or ērē.

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings:

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Pres. Second Pers.</i> ,	— ³ ,	tē;	rē,	mīnī.
<i>Fut. Second</i> ,	tō,	tōtō;	tōr.	
<i>Third</i> ,	tō,	ntō;	tōr,	ntōr.

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are formed with the following endings:

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Infinitive Present</i> ,	rē (ērē),	rī (ērī), ī,
<i>Perfect</i> ,	issē,	ūs essē,
<i>Future</i> ,	ūrūs essē,	ūm Irī.

¹ Except in *sūm*, I am, and *inquām*, I say.

² *M* is omitted in the first person, and *ti*, an ancient form of *si*, *s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *ti* and *tis* are preceded by *is*, and *erunt* in *fu-erunt*, is for *erunt*, the full form for *sunt*. Thus *fu-erunt* is a compound of *fu* and *erunt* for *sunt*. *Fu-istis*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istis* for *estis*, and *fu-isti*, of *fu* and *isti* for *estis* for *es*.

³ In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *tē* and *rē* are shortened from *tis* and *ris* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *i* into *ē*. See 28, 1. In the Future *tō* of the 2d pers. corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind., *tō* and *ntō* of the 3d pers. to *t* and *nt*. *Tōr* and *ntōr* add *r* to *tō* and *ntō*. *Tōtē* doubles the pronominal stem.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Participle Present,</i>	ns.	
<i>Future,</i>	tūrūs.	
<i>Perfect,</i>		tūs.
<i>Gerundive,</i>		ndūs.
<i>Gerund,</i>	ndī.	
<i>Supine,</i>	ūm, ū.	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem is generally the same as the Verb Stem. Thus *āma*, *mōne*, *rēg*, and *audi*, are at once Present Stems and Verb Stems.

251. The Present Stem, when not identical with the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods :

1. By inserting **n**—changed to **m** before **b** or **p** :

Frango; <i>stem</i> , frag; <i>pres. stem</i> , frang; <i>to break</i> .	
Fundo; fud; fund; <i>to pour</i> .	
Rumpo; rup; rump; <i>to burst</i> .	

2. By adding **n**, especially to vowel stems :

Sino; <i>stem</i> , sī; <i>pres. stem</i> , sīn; <i>to permit</i> .	
Sperno; spēr, sprē; spern; <i>to spurn</i> .	
Temno; tēm; temn; <i>to despise</i> .	

3. By adding **a**, **e**, or **i** :

Jūvo; <i>stem</i> , jūv; <i>pres. stem</i> , jūva; <i>to assist</i> .	
Vīdeo; vīd; vīde; <i>to see</i> .	
Cāpio; cāp; cāpi; <i>to take</i> .	
Vīncio; vinc; vinci; <i>to bind</i> .	
Haurio; haur for haus; hauri; <i>to draw</i> .	

4. By adding **sc**,—to consonant stems **isc** :

Vētērasco; <i>stem</i> , vētēra; <i>pres. stem</i> , veterasc; <i>to grow old</i> .	
Cālesco; cāle; calesc; <i>to become warm</i> .	
Cresco; crē; cresc; <i>to increase</i> .	
Apiscor; āp; apisc; <i>to obtain</i> .	
Nanciscor; nac; nancisc; ¹ <i>to obtain</i> .	

5. By adding **t** :

Plecto; <i>stem</i> , plēc; <i>pres. stem</i> , plect; <i>to braid</i> .
--

¹ *N* is inserted and *isc* added. See 1 above.

6. By doubling the final consonant—**l, r, or t:**

Pello;	<i>stem, pel</i> ;	<i>pres. stem, pell</i> ;	<i>to drive.</i>
Curro;	cur;	curr;	<i>to run.</i>
Mitto;	mit;	mitt;	<i>to send.</i>

7. By reduplication:

Gigno;	<i>stem, gĕn</i> ;	<i>pres. stem, gĕĝn</i> ;	<i>gign</i> ;	<i>to beget.</i>
Sisto;	sta;	sista, sist;		<i>to place.</i>
Sĕro;	sa;	sisa, sis, sĕr;		<i>to sow.</i>

II. PERFECT STEMS.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

Amo (a-o),	āmāvi, <i>stem</i> ,	āma;	<i>perf. stem, āmāv</i> ;	<i>to love.</i>
Dēleo,	delēvi,	dēle;	delēv;	<i>to destroy.</i>
Audio,	audīvi,	audi;	audīv;	<i>to hear.</i>

1. Most stems in *e* and a few in *a* drop the final vowel and change *v* to *u*.

Mōneo, monui; *stem, mōne*; *perf. stem, mōnev*, mōnu; *to advise.*

Crĕpo (a-o), crepui; *crĕpa*; *crĕpav*, crĕpu; *to creak.*

2. In verbs in *uo*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem:

Acuo, ācui; *stem, acu*; *perf. stem, acu*; *to sharpen.* •

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

Alō, ālui;	<i>stem, āl</i> ;	<i>perf. stem, ālu</i> ;	<i>to nourish.</i>
Frĕmo, frēmui;	frēm;	frĕmu;	<i>to rage.</i>
Tĕneo, tĕnui;	tĕn;	tĕnu;	<i>to hold.</i>
Dōceo, dōcui;	dōc;	dōcu;	<i>to teach.</i>

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

Carpo, carpsi;	<i>stem, carp</i> ;	<i>perf. stem, carps</i> ;	<i>to pluck.</i>
Rĕgo, rexi;	rĕg;	rex=regs;	<i>to rule.</i>
Scribo, scripsi;	scrib;	scrips=scribs;	<i>to write.</i>

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these

I. Some reduplicate the stem:¹

Cāno, cĕcĭni; *stem, cān*; *perf. stem, cĕcĭn*; *to sing.*

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e, i, o, or u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples under 278, I.

2. The STEM-VOWEL *a* is generally weakened to *i*, sometimes to *e*: *oādo*, *cĕcĭdi* (for *cecādi*), *to fall*.

¹ See list, 273, I.

3. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo*, *spōpondi* (for *espopondi*), to promise; *sto*, *stēti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run: *re-spondeo*, *respondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do*, *circum-dēdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto*, *circum-stēti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do*, *ad-dīdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel:¹

Emo, ēmi;	stem, ēm;	perf. stem, ēm;	to buy.
Ago, ēgi;	āg;	ēg;	to drive.
Ab-igo, āb-ēgi;	ābīg;	ābēg;	to drive away.

1. The stem-vowels *ā* and (in compounds) *i* generally become *ē*, as in *āgo* and *āb-igo*.

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:²

Ico, ici;	stem, ic;	perf. stem, ic;	to strike.
Viso, visi;	vis;	vis;	to visit.

1. Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-vowel long, either by nature or by position.

III. SUPINE STEM.

256. Vowel Stems and most Consonant Stems form the Supine Stem by adding **t**:

Amo = āmao,	āmātūm;	stem, āma,	sup. st. āmāt;	to love.
Dēleo,	dēlētūm;	dēle,	dēlēt;	to destroy.
Mōneo,	mōnītūm;	mōne,³	mōnīt;⁴	to advise.
Audio,	audītūm;	audi,	audīt;	to hear.
Dico,	dictūm;	dic,	dict;	to say.
Carpo,	carptūm;	carp,	carpt;	to pluck.

257. Stems in **d** and **t**, most stems in **l** and **r**, and a few others, add **s** to the Verb Stem.

Laedo,	laesum;	stem, laed,	sup. st. laes⁵ (for laeds);	to hurt.
Plaudo,	plausum;	plaud,	plaus (for plauds);	to applaud.
Video,	visum;	vid,	vis (for vids);	to see.
Verto,	versum;	vert,	vers⁵ (for verts);	to turn.
Vello,⁴	vulsum;	vōl,	vuls⁵ (for vols);	to pluck.
Verro,⁴	versum;	ver,	vers;	to brush.

¹ See lists, 273, II. and III.

² See 86.

³ See 251, 6.

⁴ See 213, foot-note.

⁵ See 23, and 298, 1.

258. EUPHONIC CHANGES IN STEMS.

I. BEFORE S IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

1. A GUTTURAL—**c**, **g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—generally unites with the **s** and forms **x**, but is dropped after **l** or **r**: *dūco*, *dūxi* (ducxi), *dūx*, to lead; *rēgo*, *rēxi* (regsi), *rēx*, to rule; *cōquo*, *cōxi* (coqusi), to cook; *trahō*, *trāxi* (trahsi), to draw; *algeo*, *alsi* (algsi), *als*, to be cold; *mergo*, *merxi* (mergsi), to dip; *mulceo*, *mulsum* (mulcesum), *mulc*, to caress; *figo*, *fixum* (figsum), to fasten.

2. A DENTAL—**d** or **t**—is generally dropped, but sometimes assimilated: *claudio*, *clausi* (claudsi), *claus*, *clausum* (claudsum), *claus*, to close; *mitto*,² *misi* (mitsi), *missum* (mitsum), to send; *cēdo*, *cessi* (cedsi), *cessum* (cedsum), to yield.

3. **B** is changed to **p**: *scribo*, *scripsi* (scribsi), *scrips*, to write; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, to marry.

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes strengthened with **p**: *prēno*, *pressi* (premsi), *press*, *pressum* (premsum), to press; *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), to take.

5. **S**—changed to **r** in the Present—is sometimes dropped: *haereo* (haeseo), *haesi* (haessi), *haes*, *haesum* (haessum), to stick.

II. BEFORE T IN THE SUPINE STEM.

1. A GUTTURAL—**g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—becomes **o**: *rēgo*, *rectum* (regtum), *rect*, to rule; *cōquo*, *coctum* (coqutum), to cook; *trahō*, *tractum* (trahtum), to draw.

2. **B** is changed to **p**, as in the Perfect: *scribo*, *scriptum* (scribturn), to write.

3. **M** is strengthened with **p**: *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), *sumptum* (sumtum), to take.

4. **V** is generally changed into its corresponding vowel, **u**: *volvo*, *volutum* (volvtum), to roll. If a vowel precedes, a contraction takes place—**a-u** becoming **au**, rarely **ō**; **o-u** becoming **ō**, and **u-u** becoming **ū**: *lāvo*, *lavtum*, *lavitum*, *lōtum*, to wash; *mōveo*, *movtum*, *moutum*, *mōtum*, to move; *jūvo*, *jvutum*, *juutum*, *jūtum*, to assist.

¹ Sometimes also *gu*: *extinguo*, *extinxī*, *extinctum*, to extinguish. *Vīvo*, *vixī*, *victum*, to live; *fluō*, *fluxī*, *fluxum*, to flow; and *struo*, *struxī*, *structum*, to build, form the Perfect and Supine from stems in *v* for *gu*.

² Stem *mit* (251, 6); in *misi*, *t* is dropped, but in *missum* assimilated.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.¹

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **vi** OR **ui**.I. STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **vi**.259. Principal Parts in : **o**, **äre**, **ävi**, **ätum**.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

Döno,	donäre,	donävi,	donätum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
Hönöro,	honoräre,	honorävi,	honorätum,	<i>to honor.</i>
Libëro,	liberäre,	liberävi,	liberätum,	<i>to free.</i>
Nömino,	nominäre,	nominävi,	nominätum,	<i>to name.</i>
Pugno,	pugnäre,	pugnävi,	pugnätum,	<i>to fight.</i>
Spëro,	speräre,	sperävi,	sperätum,	<i>to hope.</i>
Vöco,	vocäre,	vocävi,	vocätum,	<i>to call.</i>

II. STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **ui**.260. Principal Parts in : **o**, **äre**, **ui**, **itum**.²

Crëpo,	crepäre,	crepui,	crepïtum.	<i>to creak.</i>
<i>Incrëpo, äre, ui (ävi), itum (ätum); discrëpo, äre, ui (ävi) —.</i>				
Cübo,	cubäre,	cubui,	cubïtum,	<i>to recline.³</i>
Dömo,	domäre,	domui,	domïtum,	<i>to tame.</i>
Enëco,	enecäre,	enëcui,	enectum,	<i>to kill.⁴</i>
Fricö,	fricäre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricätum,	<i>to rub.</i>
Mico,	micäre	micui,		
<i>Dimico, äre, ävi (ui), ätum; emico, äre, ui, ätum.</i>				

¹ The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

² Note deviations in the Supine. The ending *ui* may have been formed from *avi* by dropping *a* and changing *v* to *u*, and the ending *itum* from *atum* by weakening *g* to *i*. See 213, foot-note. But in some of these verbs the Perfect and Supine may be formed from consonant stems. Thus *sönui*, *sönitum* may be formed from the liquid stem *sön*, in *söno*, *sonëre*, like *älui*, *älitum* from the liquid stem *äl* in *älo*, *diëre*, to nourish. See 253.

³ Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 273, I.

⁴ The simple *nëco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *ävi* and *ätum* occur.

Plico,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicŭtum, plicātum,	to fold.
<i>Dŭplico, multiplico, rēplico, and suppleo, are regular: āre, ōei, ātum.</i>				
Seco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
Participle, <i>secātūrus</i> .				
Sono,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonŭtum,	to sound.
Participle, <i>sonātūrus</i> . Most compounds want Sup. <i>Resono</i> has Perf. <i>resonŏei</i> .				
Tŏno	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonŭtum),	to thunder.
Veto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetŭtum,	to forbid.

1. *Pōto, āre, ōei, ātum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *cēdētus* and *jūrētus* (*cēno*, to dine, and *jūro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometimes active.

CLASS II.—PERFECT IN *i*.

I. PERFECT IN *i*: WITH REDUPLICATION.

261. Principal Parts in *o*, *āre*, *i*, *tum*.

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.

1. In *do* the characteristic *a* is short by exception: *dābam, dābo, dārem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*—*circumdō, pessumdō, edīdō*, and *cēnumdō*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the Third Conj. (278, I.) The basis of the dissyllabic compounds is *do*, to place, originally distinct from *do*, to give.

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stēti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstēti, adstātum*. *Diŏsto* wants Perf. and Sup.

II. PERFECT IN *i*: WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

262. Principal Parts in : *o*, *āre*, *i*, *ātum*, or *tum*.

Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	to assist.
Participle <i>juvātūrus</i> , but in compounds <i>jūtūrus</i> is also used.				
Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lavātum, lautum, lōtum,	to wash.

1. In poetry *lāvo* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lāvo, lavēre, lāvŏi*, etc.

2. In *jūvo* and *lāvo*, the stems are *juv* and *lav*, strengthened in the Present to *jua* and *lava*. See 251, 8; also 253, II. 4.

263. DEPONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	to endeavor.
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	to exhort.
Mīror,	mīrāri,	mīrātus sum,	to admire.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN *e*: PERFECT IN *vi* OR *ui*.I. STEM IN *e*: PERFECT IN *vi*.264. Principal Parts in: *eo*, *ēre*, *ēvi*, *ētum*.¹

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo, complēre, complēvi, complētum, *to fill*.

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo*, *impleo*.

Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	<i>to destroy</i> .
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	<i>to weep</i> .
Neco,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	<i>to spin</i> .

1. *Abdleo*, *abolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolētum*, *to destroy*, is compounded of *ab* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *abdolesco*, 277.

2. *Vieo*, *viēre*, *viētum*, *to weave, bend*, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

II. STEM IN *e*: PERFECT IN *ui*.265. Principal Parts in: *eo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *iūm*.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Dēbeo,	debēre,	debui,	debītum,	<i>to owe</i> .
Hābeo,	habēre,	habui,	habītum,	<i>to have</i> .
Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monītum,	<i>to advise</i> .
Nōceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocītum,	<i>to hurt</i> .
Pāreo,	parēre,	parui,	parītum,	<i>to obey</i> .
Plāceo,	placēre,	placui,	placītum,	<i>to please</i> .
Tāceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacītum,	<i>to be silent</i> .

266. SUPINE WANTING.—Many verbs with the Perfect in *ui*, want the Supine. The following are the most important:

Candeo, <i>to shine</i> .	Mādeo, <i>to be wet</i> .	Sorbeo, <i>to swallow</i> .
Egeo, <i>to want</i> .	Niteo, <i>to shine</i> .	Splendeo, <i>to shine</i> .
Emīneo, <i>to stand forth</i> .	Oleo, <i>to smell</i> .	Stūdeo, <i>to study</i> .
Flōreo, <i>to bloom</i> .	Falleo, <i>to be pale</i> .	Stūpeo, <i>to be amazed</i> .
Frondeo, <i>to bear leaves</i> .	Pāteo, <i>to be open</i> .	Timeo, <i>to fear</i> .
Horreo, <i>to shudder</i> .	Rūbeo, <i>to be red</i> .	Torpeo, <i>to be torpid</i> .
Lāteo, <i>to be hid</i> .	Sīleo, <i>to be silent</i> .	Vireo, <i>to be green</i> .

267. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important:

Albeo, <i>to be white</i> .	Cāneo, <i>to be gray</i> .	Hēbeo, <i>to be blunt</i> .
Calveo, <i>to be bald</i> .	Flāveo, <i>to be yellow</i> .	Hūmeo, <i>to be moist</i> .

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *iūm* are derived. See 218, foot-note.

Immineo, to threaten.
Lacteo, to suck.

Maereo, to be sad.
Polleo, to be powerful.

Renideo, to shine.
Squaleo, to be filthy.

CLASS II.—STEM IN C, N, R, OR S: PERFECT IN *ui*.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

268. Principal Parts in: *eo, ĕre, ui, tum, or sum.*

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Censeo, censĕre, censui, censum, to think.

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitus*.—*Per-censeo* wants Sup.: *re-censeo* has *re-census* and *re-censitum*.

Dōceo, docĕre, docui, doctum, to teach.

Misceo, miscĕre, miscui, { mistum, to mix.
mixtum,

Tĕneo, tenĕre, tenui, tentum, to hold.

Dēfīneo, ĕre, ui, detentum; so *obŏlīneo* and *rēfīneo*; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo, torrĕre, torrui, tostum, to roast.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *si* OR *i*¹

269. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *si*.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

I. Principal Parts in: *eo, ĕre, si, sum.*

Algeo, algĕre, alsī, —, to be cold.

Ardeo, ardĕre, arsi, arsum, to burn.

Cōnīveo, conivĕre, { conivī, to wink at.
conixi,

Frigeo, frigĕre, frixi (rare), —, to be cold.

Fulgeo, fulgĕre, fulsi, —, to shine.

Poetic *fulgo, fulgĕre*, etc.

Haereo,² haerĕre, haesi, haesum, to stick.

Jūbeo, jubĕre, jussi, jussum, to order.

Lūceo, lucĕre, luxi, —, to shine.

Lūgeo, lugĕre, luxi, —, to mourn.

Māneo, manĕre, mansi, mansum, to remain.

Mulceo, mulcĕre, mulsi, mulsum, to caress.

Compounds have *mulsum* or *multum*.

Mulgeo, mulgĕre, mulsi, mulsum, to milk.

Rīdeo, ridĕre, rīsi, risum, to laugh.

Suādeo, suadĕre, suāsi, suāsum, to advise.

Tergeo, tergĕre, tersi, tersum, to wipe.

¹ For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

² The stem of *haereo* is *haes*. The Present adds *e* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesi* and *haesum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*haeset* for *haes-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 253, I. 3.

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ēre, st, sum*.

Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (<i>rare</i>),	—	<i>to swell.</i>
Urgeo (<i>urgueo</i>),	urgēre,	ursi,	—	<i>to press.</i>

1. *Cio, ciēre, cīvi, cītum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio, ciēre, cīvi, cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *st* and *sum*, see 258, I.

II. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, tum.**

Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>to twist.</i>

270. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **i**.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

I. WITH REDUPLICATION.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	<i>to bite.</i>
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	<i>to shear.</i>

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

1. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, tum.**

Cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>to beware.</i>
Fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>to favor.</i>
Fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fūtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	<i>to move.</i>
Pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
Vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	<i>to vow.</i>

2. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>to sit.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------------

So *circumsedeo* and *supersedeo*. Other compounds thus: *assēdeo, ēre, assēdi, assessum*; but *dissēdeo, praeēdeo*, and *resēdeo*, want Supine.

Vīdeo,	vidēre,	vidi,	vīsum,	<i>to see.</i>
--------	---------	-------	--------	----------------

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**¹

Cōnīveo,	conīvēre,	{ conīvi, conīxi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
Ferveo,	fervēre,	{ fervi, fervui,	—	<i>to boil.</i>

¹ Supine Stem is wanting in most of these verbs.

Languéo,	languère,	langui,	—	<i>to be languid.</i>
Líquéo,	liquère,	liqui (licui),	—	<i>to be liquid.</i>
Prandeo,	prandère,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>
Participle, <i>pransus</i> , in an active sense, <i>having dined.</i>				
Strideo,	stridère,	stridi,	—	<i>to creak.</i>

271. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. *Regular.*

Líceor,	licēri,	licitus sum,	<i>to bid.</i>
Méreur,	merēri,	meritus sum,	<i>to deserve.</i>
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicitus sum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuftus sum,	<i>to protect.</i>
Véreur,	verēri,	veritus sum.	<i>to fear.</i>

2. *Irregular.*

Fâteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	<i>to confess.</i> ¹
Médeor,	medēri,	—	<i>to cure.</i>
Miséreur,	miserēri,	{ miseritus sum,	<i>to pity.</i>
		{ misertus sum,	
Reor,	rēri,	rātus sum,	<i>to think.</i>

3. *Semi-Deponent, — Deponent in the Perfect.*

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	<i>to dare.</i>
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus sum,	<i>to rejoice.</i>
Sôleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.272. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si**.I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ěre, si, tum.**

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples:²

Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi (<i>gsi</i>),	cinctum,	<i>to gird.</i>
Cōquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>to cook.</i>
Dĕmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	<i>to take away.</i>
Dico,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>to say.</i>
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>to lead.</i>
Exstinguo,	exstinguĕre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum, ³	<i>to extinguish.</i>
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>to carry.</i>
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>to marry.</i>
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>to rule.</i>
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>to take.</i>
Traho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	<i>to draw.</i>

¹ *Confiteor, ěri, confessus*: so *prōfiteor*.

² For *Euphonic Changes*, see 258.

³ So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Uro,	ūrēre,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Veho,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	<i>to carry.</i>
Vivo,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	<i>to live.</i>

1. STEM-VOWEL IN COMPOUNDS. See 255, II. 1.

Carpo: dē-carpo, decerpere, decerpsi, decerptum, *to pluck off*.

Rēgo: dī-rigo, dirigere, direxi, directum (214, I.), *to direct*.

Here *decarpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirigo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres., and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OBSOLETE VERBS present the same vowel changes: *Lācto* (obs.): al-līcio, allicere, allexi, allectum (214, II.), *to allure*.

So *illūcio*, *pellūcio*. For *illūcio*, see 275, I.

Spēcio (obs.): a-spīcio, aspīcere, asperi, aspectum, *to look at*.

II. Principal Parts in: o, io, ēre, si, sum.¹

Cēdo,	cedere,	cessi,	cessum,	<i>to yield.</i>
Claudo,	claudere,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>to close.</i>

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclūdo*, *exclūdo*.

Divīdo,	dividere,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>to divide.</i>
Evādo,	evadere,	evāsi,	evāsum,	<i>to evade.</i>

So other compounds of *vādo*. See 281.

Fīgo,	figere,	fixi,	fixum,	<i>to fasten.</i>
Flecto,	flectere,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>to bend.</i>
Frendo,	frendere,	—	{ frēsum,	<i>to gnash.</i>
			{ fressum,	
Laedo,	laedere,	laesi,	laesum,	<i>to hurt.</i>

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illūdo*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludere,	lūsi,	lūsum,	<i>to play.</i>
Mergo,	mergere,	mersi,	mersum,	<i>to dip.</i>
Mitto,	mittere,	missi,	missum,	<i>to send.</i>
Necto,	nectere,	{ nexi,	nexum,	<i>to bind.</i>
		{ nexui, ²		
Pecto,	pectere,	pezi,	pexum,	<i>to comb.</i>
Plecto,	plectere,	plexi,	plexum,	<i>to plait.</i>
Plaudo,	plaudere,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>to applaud.</i>

So *applāudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explūdo*, etc.

Prēmō,	premere,	pressi,	pressum (258, I. 4),	<i>to press.</i>
Quātio,	quatere,	quassi,	quassum (258, I. 2),	<i>to shake.</i>

Compounds have *u* for *qua*: *conclūtio*, etc.

Rādo,	radere,	rāsi,	rāsum,	<i>to shave.</i>
Rōdo,	rodere,	rōsi,	rōsum,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
Spargo,	spargere,	sparsi,	sparsum,	<i>to scatter.</i>

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo*, *respergo*.

Tergo,	tergere,	tersi,	tersum,	<i>to wipe off.</i>
--------	----------	--------	---------	---------------------

Also *tergeo*, *tergere* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trūdo,	trudere,	trūsi,	trūsum,	<i>to thrust.</i>
--------	----------	--------	---------	-------------------

¹ For *Euphonic Changes*, see 258.

² Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

L. WITH REDUPLICATION.

¹ Explained as compound of *do* ; see *abdo*.

Caedo, caedĕre, cĕcĭdi, caesum, to cut.

Compounds thus: *concĭdo, ĕre, concĭdi, concĭsum*.

Curro, currĕre, cŭcurri, cursum, to run.

Excurre and *praecurre* generally retain the reduplication, *excŭcurri, praecŭcurri*; other compounds generally drop it.

Fallo, fallĕre, fĕfelli, falsum, to deceive.

Rĕfello, ĕre, rĕfelli, without Supine.

Parco, parcĕre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, to spare.

Comparco, ĕre, comparĕi, comparsum, also with *e* for *a*: *comperco, ĕre, etc.* *Imparco* and *rĕparco* want Perf. and Sup.

Pello, pellĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsum,¹ to drive.

Pendo, pendĕre, pĕpendi, pensum,¹ to weigh.

Posco, poscĕre, pŏposci, —² to demand.

Tendo, tendĕre, tĕtendi, { tentum, to stretch.
tensum,

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum*; and *extendo, protendo, and rĕtendo*, have both forms.

Tundo, tundĕre, tŭtŭdi, { tunsum, to beat.
tŭsum,

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tŭsum* in Sup.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

1. Principal Parts in : o, io, ĕre, i, tum.

Ago, ĕgĕre, ĕgi, actum, to drive.

So *circumdĕgo* and *pĕrdĕgo*; *sĕtdĕgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *ĕdĕgo, ĕre, ĕdĕgi, abactum*; but *coĕgo* becomes *cŏgo, ĕre, coĕgi, coactum*, and *dĕgo, ĕre, dĕgi*, without Sup. *Prŏdĕgo* wants Sup., and *ambĕgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Căpio, capĕre, cĕpi, captum, to take.

So *antecăpio*; other compounds thus: *accĕpio, ĕre, accĕpi, acceptum*.

Emo, ĕmĕre, ĕmi, emptum, to buy.

So *coĕmo*; other compounds thus: *ĕdĕmo, ĕre, ĕdĕmi, ĕdemptum*.

Făcio, facĕre, fĕci, factum, to make.

Passive irregular: *ſto, ſĕri, factus sum*. See 294.

So *sătisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficĭo, conficĕre, conficĭi, confectum*, with regular Pass., *conficĭor, conficĭi, confectus sum*.—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *ſignificĭo, ĕre, ſŏi, ſŏtum*.

Frango, frangĕre, frĕgi, fractum, to break.

Compounds thus: *confringo, ĕre, confrĕgi, confractum*.

¹ Compounds drop reduplication, 255, I. 4.

² Compounds retain reduplication, 255, I. 4.

Fugio,	fugere,	fūgi,	fugitum,	to flee.
Jacio,	jacere,	jēci,	jectum,	to throw.

Superjacio has *jectum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio, ēre, abjēci, abjectum*.

Lēgo,	legere,	lēgi,	lectum,	to read.
-------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So compounds, except (1) *colligo, ēre, collēgi, collectum*; so *dēligo, ēligo, sēligo*: — (2) *diligō, ēre, dilēxi, dilectum*; so *intelligo, negligo*.

Linqo,	linquere,	liqui,	—	to leave.
--------	-----------	--------	---	-----------

Compounds with Sup.: *relinquo, ēre, reliqui, relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpere,	rūpi,	ruptum,	to burst.
Scābo,	scabere,	scābi,	—	to scratch.
Vinco,	vincere,	vīci,	victum,	to conquer.

2. Principal Parts in : o, io, ēre, i, sum.

Edo,	ēdere,	ēdi,	esum,	to eat.
Fodio,	fodere,	fodi,	fossum,	to dig.
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdi,	fūsum,	to pour.

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in : o, ēre, i, sum.¹

Accendo,	accendere,	accendi,	accensum,	to kindle.
----------	------------	----------	-----------	------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo, succendo*.

Cūdo,	cudere,	cūdi,	cūsum,	to forge.
Dēfendo,	defendere,	defendi,	defensum,	to defend.

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo, etc.*

Findo,	findere,	fīdi (findi),	fissum,	to part.
Ico,	icere,	ici,	ictum,	to strike.
Mando,	mandere,	mandi,	mansum,	to chew.
Pando,	Pandere,	pandi,	{ passum, pansum,	to open.
Pinso (pīso),	pinsere,	{ pinsi, pinsui,	{ pinsitum, pistum, pinsum,	to pound.
Prehendo,	prehendere,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to grasp.

Often written *prendo, prendere, etc.*

Scando,	scandere,	scandi,	scansum,	to climb.
---------	-----------	---------	----------	-----------

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo, descendo*.

Scindo,	scindere,	scīdi,	sciissum,	to rend.
Solvo,	solvere,	solvi,	sōlūtum, ²	to loose.
Vello,	vellere,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	to pluck.

Compounds in good use generally have *velī*.

Verro,	verrere,	verri,	versum,	to brush.
Verto,	vertere,	verti,	versum,	to turn.

Compounds of *dē, prae, re*, are generally deponent in the *Pres., Imperf., and Future*.

¹ For euphonic changes before *s*, see 258, I.

² *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *sōlūtum* for *sōletum*.

Viso,	visĕre,	vĭsi,	vĭsum,	to visit.
Volvo,	volveĕre,	volvi,	vŏlŭtum. ¹	to roll.

CLASS II.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **ui**.274. STEM IN A LIQUID—**l, m, n, r**: PERFECT IN **ui**.Principal Parts in: **o, ĕre, ui, tum, or ĭtum.**

Alo,	ālĕre,	alui,	{ alĭtum, altum,	to nourish.
Cello, <i>obsolete.</i>	<i>See excello, below.</i>			
Cŏlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	to cultivate.
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	to consult.
Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui (<i>rare</i>),	—	to excel.

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello, percellĕre, percŭli, percultum*.

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	to rage.
Fŭro,	furĕre,	furui,	—	to rage.
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	to groan.
Gĭgno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui (<i>f. gĕno</i>),	genĭtum,	to beget.
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	to grind.
Occŭlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	to hide.
Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	to connect.
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	—	to tremble.
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	to vomit.

275. STEMS IN **b, p, c, s, t, x**: PERFECT IN **ui**.I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, ui, tum, or ĭtum.**

Accumbo,	accumbĕre,	accŭbui,	accubĭtum,	to recline.
----------	------------	----------	------------	-------------

So other compounds of *cumbo, cŭbo*. See *cubo*, 260.

Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	—	to restrain.
-----------	-------------	------------	---	--------------

Cumbo for *cŭbo*, in compounds: see *accumbo*.

Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	{ depsĭtum, depstum,	to knead.
Ellicio,	ĕlicĕre,	elicui,	elicitum,	to elicit.

Other compounds of *lŭcio*, thus: *allŭcio, ĕre, alleat, allectum*.

Pinso,	pinsĕre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	to crush.
Pŏno,	ponĕre,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	to place.
Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Compounds thus: *corripŭo, corripĕre, corripui, correptum*.

Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	to make a noise.
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	to weave.

¹ See foot-note, p. 119.

II. Principal Parts in: **o, ěre, sui, sum.**

Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexi, nexui,	nexum,	to bind.

1. The Perfect in **sui** is a double formation, *si* enlarged to *sui*.

III. Many Inceptives in **esco** form the Perfect in **ui** from their primitives. See 282, I. 2.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A VOWEL : PERFECT IN **vi** OR **i**.276. STEM IN **a** : PERFECT IN **vi**.

Present stem adds so or n. See 251, 2 and 4.

Invĕtĕrasco, ¹	inveterascĕre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Pasco, ¹	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Sterno, ²	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	to strew.
Vĕtĕrasco, ¹	veterascĕre,	veterāvi,	—	to grow old.

1. *Sĕro*, stem *sa* (251, 7), thus :

Sĕro,	serĕre,	sēvi,	sātum,	to sow.
-------	---------	-------	--------	---------

Compounds thus : *consero, ěre, consēvi, consĕtum*.

277. STEM IN **e** : PERFECT IN **vi**.

Present Stem adds so or n. See 251.

Abolĕsco, ³	ābolescĕre,	abolēvi,	abolĭtum,	to disappear.
------------------------	-------------	----------	-----------	---------------

So *inabolĕsco* ; but *adabolĕsco* has Supine *adultum* ; *exabolĕsco, exvolĭtum* ; *obabolĕsco, obvolĭtum*.

Cerno, ⁴	cernĕre,	crēvi,	crĕtum,	to decide.
Cresco,	creścĕre,	crēvi,	crĕtum,	to grow.

Inresco and *sucresco* want Supine.

Quiesco, ⁵	quiescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiĕtum,	to rest.
Sperno, ⁴	spernĕre,	sprēvi,	sprĕtum,	to spurn.
Suesco, ⁵	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suĕtum,	to become accustomed.

278. STEM IN **i** : PERFECT IN **vi**.

Cĭpio,	cupĕre,	cuplvi,	cupĭtum,	to desire.
Lĭno, ⁵	linĕre,	livi or lēvi,	litum,	to smear.
Sāpio,	sapĕre,	sapīvi, sapui,	—	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *resĭpio*. *Dĕsĭpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

¹ Stem *invĕlĕra*, etc., strengthened by adding *so*. See 251, 4. The stem of *pasco* is *pa*, *pas*.

² Stem *stra*, by metathesis *star*, lengthened to *starn* (251, 2). The vowel *a* is then lightened to *e* before the two consonants *rn*.

³ Stems *ābōla*, *quie*, etc.

⁴ Stems *ore* and *spre*, by metathesis *cer* and *sper*, lengthened to *cern* and *spern*.

⁵ Present adds *n*.

Sino, ¹	sinĕre,	sĭvi,	sĭtum,	to permit.
Tĕro, ²	terĕre,	trĭvi,	trĭtum,	to rub.

1. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *vi* from their primitive. See 282, I. 1.

2. The following verbs have *i*-stems in the Perfect and Supine, but consonant stems in the Present.

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	to call for.
Cāpresso,	capessĕre,	capessĭvi,	capessĭtum,	to lay hold of.
Fācesso,	facessĕre,	{ facessĭvi,	facessĭtum,	to make.
		facessi,		
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessĭvi or -cessi, —		to attack.
Lācesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessĭvi,	lacessĭtum,	to provoke.
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petĭvi,	petĭtum,	to ask.
Quaero,	quaerĕre,	quaesĭvi,	quaesĭtum,	to seek.

Compounds thus: *acquiro, ĕre, acquisĭvi, acquisĭtum.*

Rūdo,	rudĕre,	rudĭvi,	rudĭtum,	to bray.
-------	---------	---------	----------	----------

3. *Nosco* and its compounds form the Perfect in *vi*.

Nosco,	nosĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
--------	---------	-------	--------	----------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *itum* in Sup., *agnĭtum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

279. STEM IN *u*: PERFECT IN *i*.

Principal Parts in : *o*, *ĕre*, *i*, *tum*.

The following are examples :

Acuo,	ĕcuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argūtum,	to convict.
<i>Coarguo</i> and <i>rĕdarguo</i> want the Supine.				
Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	to imbue.
Mĭnuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minūtum,	to diminish.
Ruo,	ruĕre,	ruĭ,	rūtum,	to fall.

Part. *ruĭtūrus*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stātuo,	statuĕre,	stātui,	statūtum,	to place.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constĭtuo*.

Tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribūtum,	to impart.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------

1. *Fluo* and *struo* have the Perfect in *xi*.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.

280. SUPINE WANTING.—The following verbs, with the Perfect in *xi* or *i*, want the Supine :

¹ Present adds *n*.

² Stem *tri*, by metathesis and change of vowel *ter*.

Ango, ěre, anxī, to strangle.

Annuo, ěre, i, to assent.

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo* has Part. *abnuītūrus*.

Bāto, ěre, i, to beat.

Bībo, ěre, i, to drink.

Congruo, ěre, i, to agree.

Ingruo, ěre, i, to assail.

Lambo, ěre, i, to lick.

Luo, ěre, i, to wash.

Part. *lūtūrus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *al-luo*, etc.—have Sup. *lūtum*.

Mēto, ěre, i, to fear.

Ningo, ěre, ninxi, to snow.

Pluo, ěre, i or vi, to rain.

Psallo, ěre, i, to play on a stringed instrument.

Sido, ěre, i, to sit down.

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sēdeo*; hence *sēdī*, *sessum*. So in compounds.

Strido, ěre, i, to creak.

Also *strideo*, ěre (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ěre, i, to sneeze.

281. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine:

Clango, to clang.

Claudo, to be lame.

Fāisco, to gape.

Glisco, to grow.

Hisco, to gape.

Stinguo, to quench;

but *distinguo*, ěre,

distinxi, *distinctum*;

so *extinguo*.

Temno, to despise; but

contemno, ěre, *con-*

tempei, *contemptum*.

Vādo, to go. See *āvā-*

do, 272, II.

Vergo, to incline.

1. For Inceptives, see 282, II.

282. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

I. VERBAL INCEPTIVES.—Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives:

Acesco	(āceo),	ācescēre,	acui,	—	to become sour.
Aresco	(areo),	ārescēre,	arui,	—	to become dry.
Cālesco	(cāleo),	calescēre,	calui,	—	to become warm.
Flōresco	(flōreo),	florescēre,	florui,	—	to begin to bloom.
Tēpesco	(tēpeo),	tepescēre,	tēpui,	—	to become warm.
Viresco	(vīreo),	virescēre,	virui,	—	to become green.

1. The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives:

Abōlesco	(āb, ōleo),	ěre,	ābolēvi,	abolītum, ¹	to disappear.
Coālesco	(cōn, āleo),	ěre,	coālui,	coalītum,	to coalesce.
Concūpisco	(con, cūpio),	ěre,	concupīvi,	concupītum,	to desire.
Convālesco	(con, vāleo),	ěre,	coavālui,	convālītum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco	(ex, ardeo),	ěre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invētērasco	(invētēro),	ěre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco	(ob, dormio),	ěre,	obdormīvi,	obdormītum,	to fall asleep.

¹ So *inōlesco*; but *adōlesco* has Sup. *adultum*; *exōlesco*, *exolītum*; *obōlesco*, *obolītum*.

Rēvivisco	(rē, vivo),	ēre, revixi,	revictum,	to revive.
Scisco	(scio),	ēre, scivi,	scitum,	to enact.

II. DENOMINATIVE INCEPTIVES.—Most denominative inceptives want both Perfect and Supine. Thus

Ditesco	(dives),	to grow rich.	Mitesco	(mitis),	to grow mild.
Dulcesco	(dulcis),	to become sweet.	Mollesco	(mollis),	to grow soft.
Grandesco	(grandis),	to grow large.	Puērasco	(puer),	to become a boy.

1. The following have the Perfect in ui :

Crēbresco	(crēber),	ēre,	crēbrui,	to become frequent.
Dūresco	(dūrus),	ēre,	dūrui,	to become hard.
Innōtesco	(in, nōtus),	ēre,	innōtui,	to become known.
Macresco	(mācer),	ēre,	macrui,	to become lean.
Mātūresco	(mātūrus),	ēre,	mātūrui,	to ripen.
Nigresco	(niger),	ēre,	nigrui,	to become black.
Obmūtесco	(ob, mūtus),	ēre,	obmūtui,	to grow dumb.
Recrūdesco	(rē, crūdus),	ēre,	recrūdui,	to bleed afresh.
Vilesco	(vilis),	ēre,	vīlui,	to become worthless.

283. DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	to embrace.
So complector, circumplector.			
Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	to obtain.
Adīpiсor, i, adēptus sum; so indīpiсor.			
Commīniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	to devise.
Rēminiscor wants Perf.			
Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	to awake.
Fātiscor,	i,	_____	to gape.
Dēfātiscor, i, dēfessus sum.			
Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum,	to enjoy.
Part. fruītūrus.		{ fruītus sum,	
Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	to perform.
Grādior,	i,	gressus sum,	to walk.
Compounds thus: aggrēdiор, i, aggressus sum.			
Irascor,	i,	_____	to be angry.
Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	to fall.
Liquor,	i,	_____	to melt.
Lōquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	to speak.
Mīniscor,	obsolete; see commīniscor.		
Mōrior,	i (tri, rare),	mortuus sum,	to die.
Part. morītūrus.			
Nāniscor,	i,	nactus (nactus) sum,	to obtain.
Nāscor,	i,	nātus sum,	to be born.
Part. nāscītūrus.			
Nitor,	i,	{ nīsus sum,	to strive.
Oblīviscor,	i,	{ nixus sum,	
		{ oblītus sum,	to forget.

Pāciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	to bargain.
Pātiōr,	i,	passus sum,	to suffer.
<i>Perpētior, 4, perpersus sum.</i>			
Prōficiscor,	i,	profectus sum,	to set out.
Quēror,	i,	questus sum,	to complain.
Rēminiscor,	i,	—	to remember.
Ringor,	i,	—	to growl.
Sēquor,	i,	secūsus sum,	to follow.
Tuor, antiquated form for tueor, 271, 1.			
Ulciscor,	i,	ultus sum,	to avenge.
Utor,	i,	ūsus sum,	to use.
Vertor; see dēvertor, etc., under <i>verto</i> , 273, III.			
Vescor,	i,	—	to eat.
<i>Semi-Deponent.</i>			
Fido,	fidēre,	fisus sum,	to trust.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN *i*: PERFECT IN *vi*.284. Principal Parts in : *io, ire, ivi, itum.*

The following are examples :

Finio,	finire,	finivi,	finitum,	to finish.
Lēnio,	lenire,	lenivi,	lentum,	to alleviate.
Mūnio,	munire,	munivi,	munitum,	to fortify.
Pūnio,	punire,	punivi,	punitum,	to punish.
Scio,	scire,	scivi,	scitum,	to know.
Sēpēlio,	sepelire,	sepelivi,	sepultum, ¹	to bury.
Sitio,	sitire,	sitivi,	—	to thirst.
Vāgio,	vagire,	vagivi,	—	to cry.

1. *V* is often dropped in the Perfect: *audis* for *audivi*. See 234, 1.2. Desideratives (332, III.),—except *desūrio, ire, —, itum*; *nuptūrio, ire, ivi*, and *partūrio, ire, ivi*,—want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others :

Balbutio, to stammer.	Fērocio, to be fierce.	Sāgio, to be wise.
Cæcūtio, to be blind.	Gannio, to bark.	Sūperbio, to be proud.
Fērio, to strike.	Ineptio, to trifle.	Tussio, to cough.

CLASS II.—STEM IN *c, l, or r*: PERFECT IN *ui*.*Present Stem adds i.* See 251, 3.285. Principal Parts in : *io, ire, ui, tum.*

Amīcio,	amicire,	amicui (xi),	amictum,	to clothe.
Apērio,	aperire,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
Opērio,	operire,	operui,	opertum,	to cover.
Sālio,	sallire,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	to leap.

Compounds thus: *dēsilio, ire, ui (ii), (desultum).*¹ Supine irregular.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.286. STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **si**.I. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **tum**.

Farcio,	farcire,	farsi,	{ fartum, fartum,	to stuff.
Compounds thus: <i>confercio, ire, confersi, confertum.</i>				
Fulcio,	fulcire,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio, ¹	haurire,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	to draw.
Sancio,	sancire,	sanxi,	{ sancitum, sancitum,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch.
Sēpio,	sepire,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge in.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vincum,	to bind.

II. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **sum**.

Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum, ²	to feel.

287. STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **i**.

I. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

Vēnio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
So compounds: <i>advento, conventio, devenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio, etc.</i>				

II. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Compērio,	comperire,	compēri,	compertum,	to learn.
Répērio,	reperire,	repēri,	repertum,	to find.

288. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

Blandior,	Iri,	blanditus sum,	to flatter.
Largior,	Iri,	largitus sum,	to bestow.
Mentior,	Iri,	mentitus sum,	to lie.
Mōlior,	Iri,	molitus sum,	to strive.
Partior,	Iri,	partitus sum,	to divide.
<i>Impertior, iri, impertitus sum; so dispertior.</i>			
Pōtior, ³	Iri,	potitus sum,	to obtain.
Sortior,	Iri,	sortitus sum,	to draw lots.

2. Irregular.

Assentior, ⁴	Iri,	assensus sum,	to assent.
-------------------------	------	---------------	------------

¹ The stem of *haurio* is *haus*. The Present adds *i* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausi* and *hausum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*hausi* for *haus-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

² Compound *assentio* has a deponent form *assentior*. See 288, 2.

³ In the Pres. Ind. and Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

⁴ Compounded of *ad* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 236, II.

Exp̄rior,	Iri,	expertus sum,	to try.
M̄tior,	Iri,	ensus sum,	to measure.
Opp̄rior,	Iri,	{ oppertus sum,	to await.
		{ oppertus sum,	
Ordior,	Iri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	Iri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *ortūrus*.—Pres. Ind. Conj. III, *ort̄ris*, *ort̄tur*. Imp. Subj., *ort̄rer* or *ort̄rer*.
—So compounds, but *ad̄rior* follows Conj. IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

Sūm, *ēdo*, *f̄ero*, *v̄olo*, *f̄io*, *eo*, *queo*,
and their compounds.

290. *Sūm*, *I am*, and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204); its numerous compounds—*absum*,¹ *adsum*, *d̄sum*, *praesum*,¹ etc.—except *possum* and *pot̄sum*, are conjugated in the same way.

II. Possūm, possē, pot̄ui, to be able.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	possūm, pot̄ēs, pot̄est;	possūmūs, pot̄estis, possunt.
IMP.	pot̄ērām; ²	pot̄ērāmūs.
FUT.	pot̄ērō;	pot̄ērīmūs.
PERF.	pot̄ui;	pot̄uimūs.
PLUP.	pot̄uērām;	pot̄uērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	pot̄uērō;	pot̄uērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	possīm, possis, possit;	possīmūs, possitis, possint.
IMP.	possēm;	possēmūs.
PERF.	pot̄uerīm;	pot̄uerīmūs.
PLUP.	pot̄uissēm;	pot̄uissēmūs.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	possē.	PRES.	pot̄ens (as an adjective).
PERF.	pot̄uissē.		

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *pōtis* is indeclinable: *pōtis sum*, *pōtis sūmus*, etc.

¹ *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons: *pot̄eram*, *pot̄eras*, *pot̄erat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *pot̄ui*, *pot̄uisti*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

- 1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.
- 2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.
- 3) That the Inf. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204, 2.

III. *Prōsūm*, I profit, is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, for, and *sūm*, to be. It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsūm*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sūm*.

291. *Edō*, *ēdērē*, *ēdī*, *ēsūm*, *to eat*.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms¹ like those of *sūm* which begin in *ēs*. Thus:

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	{ <i>ēdō</i> , <i>ēs</i> , ¹	<i>ēdis</i> , <i>est</i> ;	<i>ēdimūs</i> , <i>estis</i> .	<i>ēditis</i> , <i>estis</i> .	<i>ēdunt</i> .
-------	--	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMP.	{ <i>ēdērēm</i> , <i>ēdērēs</i> , <i>ēdērēt</i> ;	<i>ēdērēmūs</i> , <i>ēdērētis</i> , <i>ēdērent</i> .
	{ <i>essēm</i> , <i>essēs</i> , <i>essēt</i> ;	<i>essēmūs</i> , <i>essētis</i> , <i>essent</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{ <i>ēdē</i> ;	<i>ēditē</i> .
	{ <i>ēs</i> ; ¹	<i>estē</i> .
FUT.	{ <i>ēditō</i> ;	<i>ēditōtē</i> , <i>ēduntō</i> .
	{ <i>estō</i> ;	<i>estōtē</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>ēdērē</i> .	<i>essē</i> .
-------	----------------	---------------

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estūr* for *ēditūr* and *essūtūr* for *ēdērētūr* also occur.
2. FORMS IN *IM* for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ēdīm*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, etc., for *ēdām*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, etc.
3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cōmēdo* has in Sup. *cōmēsūm* or *comestum*.

292. *Fērō*, *ferrē*, *tūlī*, *lātūm*, *to bear*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>fērō</i> , <i>fers</i> , <i>fert</i> ;	<i>fērīmūs</i> , <i>fertis</i> , ² <i>fērunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>fērēbām</i> ; ³	<i>fērēbāmūs</i> .

¹ But these forms have *e* long before *s*, even where the corresponding forms of *sūm* have *e* short.

² *Fers* for *fēris*: *fert* for *fērit*; *fertis* for *fēritis* (*i* dropped).

³ Inflect the several tenses in full: *fērēbam*, *fērēbas*, etc.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
FUT.	fērām;	fērēmūs.
PERF.	tūlt;	tūllmūs.
PLUP.	tūlērām;	tūlērēmūs.
FUT. PERF.	tūlērō;	tūlērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērām;	fērāmūs.
IMP.	ferrēm;	ferrēmūs. ¹
PERF.	tūlērīm;	tūlērīmūs.
PLUP.	tūlissēm;	tūlissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fēr; ²	fertō.
FUT.	fertō,	fertōtō,
	fertō;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrē. ¹
PERF.	tūlissē.
FUT.	lātūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. fērens.
FUT. lātūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen.	fērendī.
Dat.	fērendō.
Acc.	fērendūm.
Abł.	fērendō.

SUPINE.

Acc. lātūm.
Abł. lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fērōr, ferrī, lātūs sūm, *to be borne.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fērōr, ferrīs, fertūr; ³	fērīmūr, fērīmīnī, fēruntūr.
IMP.	fērēbār;	fērēbāmūr.
FUT.	fērār;	fērēmūr.
PERF.	lātūs sūm;	lātī sūmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs ērām;	lātī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	lātūs ērō;	lātī ērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār;	fērāmūr.
-------	--------	----------

¹ *Ferram*, etc., for *fērērām*, etc.; *ferrī* for *fērērī* (*e* dropped).

² *Fēr* for *fērē*; *ferto*, *fertō*, *fertōtō*, for *fērūtō*, *fērūtōtō*, *fērūtōtōtō* (*i* dropped).

³ *Ferrīs* for *fērērīs*; *fertūr* for *fērūtūr*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
IMP.	ferrĕr; ¹	ferrĕmĭr.
PERF.	lātūs sĭm;	lātī sĭmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs essĕm;	lātī essĕmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrĕ; ¹	fĕrĭmĭnĭ.
FUT.	fertĕr,	—
	fertĕr;	fĕruntĕr.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferrĭ. ¹	
PERF.	lātūs essĕ.	PERF. lātūs.
FUT.	lātūm ĭrĭ.	GER. fĕrendūs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fĕro* has two principal irregularities:

1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tūli* (rarely *tētūli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.

2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* before *r*, *s*, and *t*.

/ 2. COMPOUNDS of *fĕro* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

<i>ab-</i>	<i>aufĕro</i> ,	<i>aufferĕ</i> ,	<i>abstūli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> .
<i>ad-</i>	<i>affĕro</i> ,	<i>afferĕ</i> ,	<i>attūli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> .
<i>con-</i>	<i>confĕro</i> ,	<i>conferĕ</i> ,	<i>contūli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> .
<i>dis-</i>	<i>diffĕro</i> ,	<i>differĕ</i> ,	<i>distūli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> .
<i>ex-</i>	<i>effĕro</i> ,	<i>effĕrĕ</i> ,	<i>extūli</i> ,	<i>ĕlātum</i> .
<i>in-</i>	<i>infĕro</i> ,	<i>inferĕ</i> ,	<i>intūli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> .
<i>ob-</i>	<i>offĕro</i> ,	<i>offerĕ</i> ,	<i>obtūli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> .
<i>sub-</i>	<i>suffĕro</i> ,	<i>sufferĕ</i> ,	<i>sustūli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> .

Sustūli and *sublātum* are not often used in the sense of *aufĕro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 273, I. 1.

293. Vŏlĕ,	vellĕ,	vŏluĭ,	<i>to be willing.</i>
Nŏlĕ,	nollĕ,	nŏluĭ,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
Mālĕ,	mallĕ,	māluĭ,	<i>to prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	vŏlĕ,	nŏlĕ,	mālĕ,
	vĭs,	nŏn vĭs,	māvĭs,
	vult;	nŏn vult;	māvult;
	vŏlŭmūs,	nŏlŭmūs,	mālŭmūs,
	vultūs,	nŏn vultūs,	māvultūs,
	vŏlunt.	nŏlunt.	mālunt.

¹ *Fĕrrĕr*, etc., for *fĕrrĕrĕr*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrrĕrĕ*; *fertĕr* for *fĕrrĕrĕr*; *ferrĭ* for *fĕrrĕrĭ*, *fĕrĭ*.

IMP.	vŏlēbām.	nŏlēbām.	mālēbām.
FUT.	vŏlām.	nŏlām.	mālām.
PERF.	vŏluŭ.	nŏluŭ.	mālul.
PLUP.	vŏluērām.	nŏluērām.	māluērām.
FUT. PERF.	vŏluērŏ.	nŏluērŏ.	māluērŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vělim. ¹	nŏlīm.	mālīm.
IMP.	vellēm. ²	nollēm.	mallēm.
PERF.	vŏluērīm.	nŏluērīm.	māluērīm.
PLUP.	vŏluissēm.	nŏluissēm.	māluissēm.

IMPERATIVE.

P.	nŏli,	nŏlitě.
F.	nŏlitŏ,	nŏlitŏtě,
	nŏlitŏ;	nŏluntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	vellě.	nollě.	mallě.
PERF.	vŏluissě.	nŏluissě.	māluissě.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	vŏlens.	nŏlens.
-------	---------	---------

1. The stem of *vŏlo* is *vŏl* with variable stem-vowel, ŏ, ě, ů.
2. *Nŏlo* is compounded of *ně* or *nŏn* and *vŏlo*; *Malŏ*, of *māgŭs* and *vŏlo*.
3. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *VOLO*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sis*, *sultis*, for *sī vis*, *sī vultis*; *vin'* for *visne*.—(2) Of *NŪLO*: *nēvis*, *nēvult* (*nēvolt*), *nevelle*, for *non (ne) vis*, *non (ne) vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of *MALO*: *māvŏlo*, *mavŏlim*, *mavellem*, for *mālo*, *mālīm*, *mallem*.

294. *Fĭŏ, fĭērĭ, factŭs sŭm, to become, be made.**

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	fĭŏ, fĭs, fĭt;	fĭmŭs, fĭtĭs, fĭunt.
IMP.	fĭēbām;	fĭēbāmŭs.
FUT.	fĭām;	fĭēmŭs.

¹ *Vělim* is inflected like *sĭm*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

² *Vellēm* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velĕrem*, *velĕre*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velĕrem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velĕre*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nollem* and *nolle*, for *nolĕrem* and *nolĕre*; *mallem* and *malle*, for *malĕrem* and *malĕre*.

³ COMPOUNDS of *ſto* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *conſtĭ*, *dĕſtĭ*, and *inſtĭ* are defective. See 297, III. 2.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PERF.	factūs sūm;	factī sūmūs.
PLUP.	factūs ērām;	factī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	factūs ērō;	factī ērimūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fiām;	fiāmūs.
IMP.	fiērēm;	fiērēmūs.
PERF.	factūs sīm;	factī sīmūs.
PLUP.	factūs essēm;	factī essēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fi;	fiē.
-------	-----	------

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	fiēri.
PERF.	factūs essē.
FUT.	factūm iri.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. factūs.
GER. faciendūs.

295. Eō, iē, ivi, itūm, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō, is, it;	imūs, itis, eunt.
IMP.	ibām;	ibāmūs.
FUT.	ibō;	ibimūs.
PERF.	ivi;	ivimūs.
PLUP.	ivērām;	ivērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	ivērō;	ivērimūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eām;	eāmūs.
IMP.	irēm;	irēmūs.
PERF.	ivērim;	ivērimūs.
PLUP.	ivissēm;	ivissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	i;	itē.
FUT.	itō,	itōtē,
	itō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	irē.
PERF.	ivissē.
FUT.	itūrus essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. iens. Gen. euntis.
FUT. itūrus.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	eundl.
Dat.	eundŏ.
Acc.	eundŭm.
Abl.	eundŏ.

Acc. Itŭm.
Abl. Itŭ.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 234: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *itur*, *iditur*, etc. (301, 1), but *iri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amatum iri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *iei* into *iŏ*.—*Veneo* (*venum eo*) has sometimes *veniŏbam* for *venibam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eŏm*, *iŏs*, *iŏt*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc.

Ambio is regular, like *audio*, though *ambiŏbam* for *ambibam* occurs.

296. *Queo*, *quŏre*, *quŏvi*, *quŏtum*, to be able, and *nŏqueo*, *nŏquŏre*, *nequŏvi* (*iŏ*), *nequŏtum*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.¹

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important.²

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepi, *I have begun*. *Mŏmŏni*, *I remember*. *Odi*, *I hate*.

INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepl.	mŏmŏnl.	ŏdl.
PLUP.	coepŏrŏm.	mŏmŏnŏrŏm.	ŏdŏrŏm.
FUT. PERF.	coepŏrŏ.	mŏmŏnŏrŏ.	ŏdŏrŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepŏrŏm.	mŏmŏnŏrŏm.	ŏdŏrŏm.
PLUP.	coepissŏm.	mŏmŏnissŏm.	ŏdissŏm.

¹ A passive form *quŏtur*, *nequŏtur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

² Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs. See 259 to 283.

IMPERATIVE.

	S. mēmentō.	
	P. mēmentōtē.	

INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coeppissē.	mēmīnissē.	ōdiassē.
FUT.	coeptūrus essē.		ōsūrus essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptūs.		ōsūs. ¹
FUT.	coeptūrus.		ōsūrus.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepti* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum, eram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memini* and *ōdi* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuevi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes*.²

INDIC.	Pres.	āio,	ais, ³	ait;	—	—	aiunt.
	Imp.	aiēbām,	ēbās,	ēbāt;	ēbāmūs,	ēbātīs,	ēbant. ⁴
	Perf.	—	—	ait;	—	—	—
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	aiās,	aiāt;	—	—	aiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai (rare).					
PART.	Pres.	aiens (as adjective).					

2. Inquam, *I say*.

INDIC.	Pres.	inquām,	inquēs,	inquīt;	inquīmūs,	inquītīs,	inquunt.
	Imp.	—	—	inquiēbāt; ⁵	—	—	—
	Fut.	—	inquiēs,	inquiēt;	—	—	—
	Perf.	—	inquistī,	inquīt;	—	—	—
IMPER.	Pres.	inquē.	Fut.	inquītō.			

¹ *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, pēōsus*.

² In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo, a'-ia*. See 7, 4, 4).

³ The interrogative form *aiene* is often shortened into *ain*.

⁴ *Aidam, aidas*, etc., occur in comedy.

⁵ Also written *inquibat*.

3. Fāri, to speak.¹

INDIC.	Pres.	—	—	fātūr;	—	—	—
	Fut.	fābōr,	—	fābītūr;	—	—	—
	Perf.	fātūs sūm,	ēs,	est;	fāti sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātūs ērām,	erās,	erāt;	fāti erāmūs,	erātīs,	erant.
SUBJ.	Perf.	fātūs sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	fāti sīmūs,	sītīs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātūs essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	fāti essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.
IMPER.	Pres.	fārē.					
INFIN.	Pres.	fārī.					
PART.	Pres.	(fans) fantis;	Perf.	fātūs;	Ger.	fandūs.	
GERUND,	Gen. and Abl.	fandī, dō.	SUPINE,	Abl.	fātū.		

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—āvē, avētē; avētō; INF. avērē, hail.
 salvē, salvētē, salvētō;² salvērē, hail.
 cēdō, cettē, tell me, give me.
 āpāgē, begone.

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC.	Pres.	Fut.	SUB. Pres.	Imp.	INFIN.
confīt,	—	—	confiāt,	confiērēt,	confiērī, to be done.
defīt,	defiunt,	defiet,	defiāt,	—	defiērī, to be wanting.
infīt,	infiant,	—	—	—	— to begin.
SUB.	Imp.	fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt,	—	—	fōrent. INF. fōrē. ³
IND.	Pres.	ōvāt.	PART.	ōvans,	he rejoices.
IND.	Pres.	quaesō, quaesūmūs, ⁴			I pray.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.⁵ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only :

¹ *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *afāmūr*, *afamīni*, *afābar*; *afabēris*.

² The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

³ *Fōrem* = *essem*; *fōre* = *fūturum esse*. See 204, 2.

⁴ Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

⁵ The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause: *hoc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

Děcět,	děcuť,	<i>it becomes.</i> ¹	Přět,	{ přiguť,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Libět,	{ libuť,	<i>it pleases.</i> ¹	Paenitět,	{ přitům est,	<i>it causes re-</i>
	{ libitům est,			gret ; paenitēt me,	<i>I repent.</i>
Lícět,	{ licuť,	<i>it is lawful.</i> ¹	Pūdět,	{ pūduť,	<i>it shames.</i>
	{ licitům est,			{ pūditům est,	
Liquět,	licuť,	<i>it is evident.</i> ¹	Taedět,	<i>it wearies ; pertaedět,</i>	<i>per-</i>
Misěrět,	misěrītům est,	<i>it excites pity ;</i>		taesům est.	
	me misěret,	<i>I pity.</i>			
Oportět,	oportuť,	<i>it behooves.</i>			

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licens*, free; *licitūs*, allowed; (3) from PAENITET: *paenitēns*, penitent; *paenitendūs*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pūdēns*, modest; *pūdendūs*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenitendūm*, *pūdendū*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmínăt, *it lightens* ; grandínăt, *it hails* ; lūcescť, *it grows light* ; pluť, *it rains* ; rorăt, *dew falls* ; tōnăt, *it thunders*.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accidit, *it happens* ; appāret, *it appears* ; constat, *it is evident* ; contingit, *it happens* ; dēlectat, *it delights* ; dōlet, *it grieves* ; intěrest, *it concerns* ; jūvat, *it delights* ; pătet, *it is plain* ; plācet, *it pleases* ; praestat, *it is better* ; rēfert, *it concerns*.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi crēditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed* ; tibi creditur, *you are believed* ; crēditum est, *it was believed* ; certātur, *it is contended* ; curritur, *there is running, people run* ; pugnātur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight* ; vivitur, *we, you, they live*.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (232) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write* ; tibi scribendum est, *you must write* ; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

¹ These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *cēlēritēr currere*, to run swiftly; *tām cēler*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hic,	here;	hūc,	hither;	hinc,	hence.
illuc,	there;	illūc,	thither;	illinc,	thence.
istuc,	there;	istūc,	thither;	istinc,	thence.
ūbi,	where?	quō,	whither?	undē,	whence?

II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hodie,	to-day.	nondūm,	not yet.	saepē,	often.
ibi,	then.	nunc,	now.	sēmēl,	once.
jām,	now.	nunquām,	never.	tūm,	then.
jamdiū,	long since.	ūlm,	formerly.	unquām,	ever.

III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeō,	so.	paenē,	almost.	sic,	so.
āltēr,	otherwise.	pālām,	openly.	ūt,	as.
itā,	so.	prorsūs,	wholly.	valdē,	much.
magis,	more.	ritē,	rightly.	vix,	scarcely.

IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	why?	eō,	for this reason.
quārē,	wherefore.	ideō,	on this account.
quāmobrēm,	wherefore.	idcirco,	therefore.
quaproptēr,	wherefore.	propterea,	therefore.

1. FOR INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES, see 346, II. 1 and 2.

2. FOR NEGATIVE PARTICLES, see 584 and 585.

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē* :

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>lofty.</i>
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	<i>loftily.</i>
prūdēns,	prudēntior,	prudētissimus,	<i>prudent.</i>
prūdētēr,	prudētius,	prudētissimē,	<i>prudently.</i>

1. MAGIS AND MAXIME.—When the adjective is compared with *māgis* and *maximē*, the adverb is compared in the same way :

ēgrēgius,	māgis egregius,	maximē egregius,	<i>excellent.</i>
egregiē,	māgis egregie,	maximē egregie,	<i>excellently.</i>

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity :

bōnus,	mēlior,	optimū,	<i>good.</i>
bēnē,	mēlius,	optimē,	<i>well.</i>
mālē,	pejus,	pessimē,	<i>badly.</i>

3. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective :

_____	dētērior,	dētērimus,	<i>worse.</i>
_____	dētērius,	dētērimē,	<i>worse.</i>
nōvus,	_____	novissimus,	<i>new.</i>
nōvē,	_____	novissimē,	<i>newly.</i>

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared :

diū,	diūtius,	diutissimē,	<i>for a long time.</i>
saepē,	saepius,	saepissimē,	<i>often.</i>
sātis,	satius,	_____	<i>sufficiently.</i>
nūpēr,	_____	nuperrimē,	<i>recently.</i>

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared : *hic*, here ; *nunc*, now ; *vulgariūter*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs : *primō*, *primū*, *pōtissimū*.

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other : *in Itālia esse*, to be in Italy ; *antē mē*, before me. See 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Amōx*, *amb*, around, about ; *dis*, *di*, asunder ; *rē*, *rēd*, back ; *sē*, *sēd*, aside, apart ; and *vē*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pāter ET filius*, the father and son; *pāter AUT filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *lābor vōluptasquē*, labor and pleasure; *Carthāginem cēpit ac diruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dūm colligunt, effūgit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, quē, atquē, ac, and. Etiām, quōquē, also. Nēquē, nēc, and not. Nēquē—nēquē, nēc—nēc, nēquē—nēc, neither—nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation:

Aut, vėl, vė, sīvė (seu), or. Aut—aut, vėl—vėl, either—or. Sīvė—sīvė, either—or.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition:

Sėd, autėm, vėrėm, vėrė, but. At, but, on the contrary. Atquė, rather. Cėtėrėm, but still. Tāmėn, yet.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference:

Ergō, Igtūr, indė, proindė, itāquē, hence, therefore. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause:

Nām, namquē, ėnėm, ėtėnėm, for.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions:

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time:

Quandō, quėm, when. Ut, ūbė, as, when. Quum prīmum, ūt prīmum, ūbi prīmum, sīmūl, sīmūlēc, sīmūlatquē, as soon as. Dūm, dōnēc, quōd,

quamdiū, *while, until, as long as*. Antēquām, *priusquam, before*. Postēquām, *after*.

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison :

Ut, ūti, sicut, sicuti, *as, so as*. Vēlūt, *just as*. Praeūt, proūt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quām, *as*. Tanquām, quāsi, ūt sī, ac sī, vēlūt sī, *as if*.

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition :

Sī, *if*. Si nōn, nīsi, nī, *if not*. Sīn, *but if*. Si quidēm, *if indeed*. Si mōdō, dūm, mōdō, dummōdō, *if only*.

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession :

Quamquām, licēt, quūm, *although*. Etsī, tāmetsī, etiāmsī, *even if*. Quāmvīs, quantumvis, quantumlibēt, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nē, *grant that not*.

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ūti, *that, in order that*. Nē, nēvē (neu), *that not*. Quō, *that*. Quōmīnūs, *that not*.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that*. Ut nōn, quīn, *so that not*.

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Quīā, quōd, *because*. Quūm, *since*. Quōniām, quāndō, quāndōquīdem, sīquīdem, *since indeed*.

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Nē, nonnō, nūm, utrūm, ān, *whether*. An nōn, necnē, *or not*.

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : ō, hēm, ehēm, huī, ālāt, pāpae, vah, ēn, eccē.

2. Joy : iō, eu, ēvoe.

3. Sorrow : vae, hei, heu, zheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.

4. Disgust : ahā, phui, āpāgē.

5. Calling : heus, ō, ehō, ehōdūm.

6. Praise : eugē, ejā, hejā.

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. WORDS may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *āmr*, love, from *āmō*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *bēnēvōlens*, well-wishing, from *bēnē*, well, and *vōlens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

ūlās, ūlā, ūlūm, cūlās, cūlā, cūlūm.

hort-ūlus,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-ūla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ūlum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cūlus,	a small flower,	"	flōs,	flower.
partī-cūla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
mūnus-cūlum,	a small present,	"	mūnus,	present.

1. *Ulus, ūla, ūlum*, originally *δlus, δla, δlum*, are appended to *a* and *o* stems, and to Dental and Guttural Stems. When appended to *a* and *o* stems, they take the place of the final vowel.

2. The original forms *δlus, δla, δlum*, are used after *l* or *e* : *filidlus*, little son, from *filius* : *filidla*, little daughter, from *filia* ; *atriclum*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. *El-lus, el-la, el-lum, il-lus, il-la, il-lum*, are used when the stem

of the primitive ends in **a** or **o**, preceded by **l**, **n**, or **r**: *ōcel-lus*,¹ small eye, from *ōcūlus*; *fābel-la*, short fable, from *fābūla*; *vil-tum*,¹ a little wine, from *vinum*.

4. **Cūlus**, **cūla**, **cūlum**, are appended to **e**, **i**, and **o** stems, and to liquid and **s**-stems, but stems in **u** change **u** into **i**, and stems in **on** change **o** into **u**: *versī-cūlus*, a little verse, from *versus*; *hōmun-cūlus*, a small man, from *hōmo*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncūlus*, *uncūla*: *āv-uncūlus*, maternal uncle, from *āvus*, grandfather.²

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *ēquuleus*, a small horse, from *ēquus*; *hōmuncio*, a small man, from *hōmo*.

316. **PATRONYMICS**, or names of descent, generally end in

ides ,	ides ,	iādes ,	ādes ,	<i>masculine.</i>
is ,	ōis ,	ias ,	as ,	<i>feminine.</i>
Tantāl-ides,	<i>son of Tantalus</i> ;	Tantāl-is,	<i>daughter of Tantalus.</i>	
Thēs-ides,	<i>son of Theseus</i> ;	Thes-ōis,	<i>daughter of Theseus.</i>	
Lāert-iādes,	<i>son of Laertes</i> ;	Laert-ias,	<i>daughter of Laertes.</i>	
Thesti-ādes,	<i>son of Thestius</i> ;	Thesti-as,	<i>daughter of Thestius.</i>	

1. These endings take the place of the final stem-vowel or diphthong.

2. **Ides** (**i**) and **is** are the common endings.

3. **Ides** (**i**) and **ōis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

4. **Iādes**, **ādes**, and **ias**, **as**, are used principally with primitives in *iūs*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Aeneādes*, masc., and *Aenēis*, fem.

5. **Inē** and **ōnē** are rare feminine endings: *Neptūn-inē*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrēsi-ōnē*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. **DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE** are often formed with the endings

ārium ,	ētum, tum ,	ile . ³
cōlumb-ārium,	<i>a dovecot,</i>	from cōlumbā.
querc-ētum,	<i>a forest of oaks,</i>	" quercus.
sālic-tum,	<i>a thicket of willows,</i>	" sālix.
ōv-ile,	<i>a sheepfold,</i>	" ōvis.

1. **Ārium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Ētum, tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the place where they flourish: *ōlīvētum*, an olive-grove, from *ōlīva*.

¹ The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem: thus, *ōcūlus*, *ōcūl-ūlus*=*ōcul-lus*=*ōcel-lus*; *vinum*, *vin-ūlum*=*vin-tum*=*vil-tum*.

² *Nābē-cūla*, *plēbē-cūla*, and *vulpē-cūla*, are formed as if from *e*-stems.

³ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bovine*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius, io,	ium, itium,	tus, itus,	ātus. ¹
stātu-ārius,	a statuary,	from	stātua.
lūd-io,	a player,	"	lūdua.
sācerdōt-ium,	priesthood,	"	sācerdūs.
serv-itium,	servitude,	"	servus.
vir-tus,	virtue,	"	vīr.
consūl-ātus,	consulship,	"	consūl.

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **itus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *juventus*, youth, from *juvenis*.

4. **Atus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *senātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *senex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326, 2.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings

ia,	itia,	itās,	itūdo,	īmōnia. ¹
diligent-ia,	<i>diligence,</i>		from	diligens.
amic-itia,	<i>friendship,</i>		"	amicus.
bōn-itās,	<i>goodness,</i>		"	bōnus.
sōl-itūdo,	<i>solitude,</i>		"	sōlus.
acr-īmōnia,	<i>sharpness,</i>		"	acr.

1. **Itās, tās, ētās**.—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *libertās*, liberty, from *libēr*; *ētas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *piētās*, piety, from *pīus*. Sometimes the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *fācilis*, *fācilitas*, faculty; *difficilis*, *difficultas*, difficulty; *pōtens*, *pōtestas*, power; *hōnestus*, *hōnestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **itās**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *fīrmus*, *fīrmilas*, *fīrmitūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *sollīcītus*, *sollīcītūdo*, solicitude.

3. **īmōnia** is rare: *Parsīmōnia*=*parcimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*.

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

320. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with various endings, especially with

ör; ium; mēn, mentum; būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum.

ām-ör,	love,	from	āmo.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaudeo.
ornā-mentum,	ornament,	"	orno.
vōcā-būlum,	appellation,	"	vōco.
sīmūlā-crum,	image,	"	sīmūlo.

1. **Or**¹ designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium**¹ has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done*: *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifico*.

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject*: *flūmen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluō*; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *āgo*.

A connecting vowel is sometimes used: *āl-i-mentum*. The stem is sometimes shortened or changed: *mōmentum*, moving force, from *mōveo*.

4. **Būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum**, designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehicūlum*,² vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho*; *stābūlum*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

The stem-vowel is sometimes changed: *sepulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sepelio*.

5. **Ūlum, ūla**.—*Ūlum* for *cūlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vino-ūlum*, a bond, from *vincio*; *cing-ūlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ūla* also occurs: *rēgūla*, rule, from *rēgo*.

6. **Us, a, o**, sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *cōqus*, cook, from *cōquo*; *scriba*, writer, from *scribo*; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. **Ēla, ido, igo**, and a few other endings also occur: *querēla*, complaint, from *queror*; *cūpido*, desire, from *cūpio*; *ōrigo*, origin, from *ōrior*.

321. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with the endings

tör,	tio,	tūs,	tūra.
āmā-tör,	lover,	from	āmo.
audi-tor,	hearer,	"	audio.
mōnī-tio,	advising,	"	mōneo.
audi-tio,	hearing,	"	audio.
audi-tūs,	hearing,	"	audio.
can-tūs,	singing,	"	cāno.
pic-tūra,	painting,	"	pingo.

¹ See foot-note, p. 143.

² With connecting vowel.

1. **T** in these endings becomes **s** when added to stems which form the Supine stem in **s**: *vī-sio*, *vī-sus*, sight, vision. See 257.

2. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*: *victor*, conqueror; *victrix*, conqueress.

3. **Tio**, **tus**, and **tūra**, form *abstract nouns*, and denote the *act* itself.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

323. **FULNESS**.—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

ōsus,	ōlentus,	ūlentus,	ātus,	itus,	ūtus,	tus. ¹
ānīm-ōsus,	<i>full of courage,</i>		from		ānīmus.	
vīn-ōlentus,	<i>full of wine,</i>		"		vīnum.	
ōp-ūlentus,	<i>opulent,</i>		"		ōpēs.	
āl-ātus,	<i>winged,</i>		"		āla.	
turr-itus,	<i>turreted,</i>		"		turris.	
corn-ūtus,	<i>horned,</i>		"		cornu.	
jus-tus,	<i>just,</i>		"		jūs.	

324. **MATERIAL**.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eūs,	īnus,	īneūs,	nus,	neūs,	āceūs,	īcius. ¹
aur-eus,	<i>golden,</i>		from		aurum.	
fāg-īnus,	<i>of beech,</i>		"		fāgus.	
fāg-īneūs,	<i>of beech,</i>		"		fāgus.	
pōpul-nus,	<i>of poplar,</i>		"		pōpūlus.	
pōpul-neūs,	<i>of poplar,</i>		"		pōpūlus.	
pāpŷr-āceūs,	<i>of papyrus,</i>		"		pāpŷrus.	
lāter-īcius,	<i>of brick,</i>		"		lāter.	

1. These endings sometimes denote *characteristic* or *possession*: *virgin-ēūs*, belonging to a maiden.

325. **CHARACTERISTIC**.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to*, *derived from*, generally end in

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings generally take the place of the final vowel, but *u*-stems retain *u* before the ending *deus*: *fructu-ōsus*, fruitful.

icus, ilis, inus, ius; ālis, ānus, āris, ārius, ensis.¹

civ-icus,	relating to a citizen,	from	civis.
civ-ilis,	relating to a citizen,	"	civis.
ēqu-inus,	of, pertaining to a horse,	"	ēquus.
rēg-ius,	royal,	"	rex.
mort-ālis,	mortal,	"	mors.
urb-ānus,	of, pertaining to a city,	"	urbs.
sālūt-āris,	salutary,	"	sālūs.
auxili-ārius,	auxiliary,	"	auxilium.
fōr-ensis,	forensic,	"	fōrum.

1. **Ester, ūlūnus, ūicus**, and a few other endings occur: *camp-ester*, level, from *campus*; *mār-ūlūnus*, maritime, from *māre*; *rus-licus*, rustic, from *rūs*.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in

ānus, iānus, inus; iācus, ūcus, ius, ensis, iensis, as, aeus, ēus.¹

Sull-ānus,	of <i>Sylla</i> ,	from	Sulla.
Rōm-ānus,	<i>Roman</i> ,	"	Rōma.
Cicērōn-iānus,	<i>Ciceronian</i> ,	"	Cicēro.
Lāt-inus,	<i>Latin</i> ,	"	Lātium.
Cōrīnth-iācus,	<i>Corinthian</i> ,	"	Cōrīnthus.
Cōrīnth-ius,	<i>Corinthian</i> ,	"	Cōrīnthus.
Britann-icus,	<i>British</i> ,	"	Britannus.
Cann-ensis,	of <i>Cannae</i> ,	"	Cannae.
Athēn-iensis,	<i>Athenian</i> ,	"	Athēnae.
Fidēn-ās,	of <i>Fidenae</i> ,	"	Fidēnae.
Smyrn-aeus,	<i>Smyranean</i> ,	"	Smyrna.
Pythāgōr-ēus,	<i>Pythagorean</i> ,	"	Pythāgōrās.

1. **Anus** and **iānus** are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but others also occur.

2. **PATRIALS.**—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Cōrīnthii*, the Corinthians; *Athēnienses*, the Athenians.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. **DIMINUTIVES** from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

ūlus, ūla, ūlum, cūlus, cūla, cūlum. ¹	
long-ūlus, a, um,	rather long, from longus.
pauper-cūlus, a, um,	rather poor, " pauper.

¹ See 319, foot-note.

1. *Olus*, *ellus*, and *illus*, also occur as in nouns.
2. *Cūlus* is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-cūlus*, somewhat hard, from *dūrius*.

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

bundus, *cundus*, *īdus*, *īlis*, *bīlis*, *ax*¹

<i>mīrā-bundus</i> ,	<i>wondering</i> ,	from	<i>mīror</i> .
<i>vērē-cundus</i> ,	<i>diffident</i> ,	"	<i>vēreor</i> .
<i>cāl-īdus</i> ,	<i>warm</i> ,	"	<i>cāleo</i> .
<i>pāv-īdus</i> ,	<i>fearful</i> ,	"	<i>pāveo</i> .
<i>dōc-īlis</i> ,	<i>docile</i> ,	"	<i>dōceo</i> .
<i>āmā-bīlis</i> ,	<i>worthy of love</i> ,	"	<i>āmo</i> .
<i>pugn-ax</i> ,	<i>pugnacious</i> ,	"	<i>pugno</i> .
<i>aud-ax</i> ,	<i>daring</i> ,	"	<i>audeo</i> .

1. *Bundus* and *cundus* have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laeta-bundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *vērē-cundus*, diffident.

2. *Idus* retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. *Ilis* and *bīlis* denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *āmābīlis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terrībīlis*, terrible, capable of producing terror. *Bīlis* is sometimes added to the Supine stem: *flez-l-bīlis*, flexible.

4. *Ax* denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. *Uus*, *ūlus*, *tīcius*, and *tīvus*, also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *īdus*: *vāc-uus*, vacant.—(2) *ūlus* in the sense of *ax*: *crēd-ūlus*, credulous.—(3) *tīcius* and *tīvus* in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fic-tīcius*, feigned, from *fingo*; *cap-tīvus*, captive, from *cāpio*.

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

<i>hōdiernus</i> ,	<i>of this day</i> ,	from	<i>hōdiē</i> .
<i>contrārius</i> ,	<i>contrary</i> ,	"	<i>contrā</i> .

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*.

¹ See 819, foot-note.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called *Denominatives*. They end in

Conj. I. o,	Conj. II. eo,		Conj. IV. io.
cūro,	to cure,	from	cūra.
nōmīno,	to name,	"	nōmēn.
libēro,	to liberate,	"	libēr.
flōreo,	to bloom,	"	flōs.
lūceo,	to shine,	"	lux.
albeo,	to be white,	"	albus.
finio,	to finish,	"	finis.
mollio,	to soften,	"	molliā.

1. Denominatives of the Second Conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

2. *Asco* and *esco* occur in Inceptives. See 332, II.

3. DEPONENT. Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dōmīnōr*, to domineer, from *dōmīnus*.

II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. I. FREQUENTATIVES denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation, and end in *ito*, or *to*, sometimes *so*.

clām-īto, ¹	to exclaim,	from	clāmo.
vōl-īto,	to flit,	"	vōlo.
hāb-īto,	to have often,	"	hābeo.
āg-īto,	to put in motion often,	"	āgo.
can-to,	to sing,	"	cāno.
cur-so,	to run about,	"	curro.

1. Primitives of Conj. I. take *ito*, but contraction sometimes takes place: *adju-to* for *adjuv-ito*, to assist often, from *adjuvo*.

2. *So* is used with primitives which form the Supine in *sum*. See 257.

3. Frequentatives may be formed from other frequentatives: *cant-ito*, to sing often, from *can-to*, from *cāno*.

4. *Esso* and *isso* form derivatives which are generally classed with *frequentatives*, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *fūcio*, *fūcesso*, to do earnestly;

¹ *It* takes the place of the final stem-vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

incípio, incípiso, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *rápío, raplo*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES OR INCHOATIVES denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

	asco,	esco,		isco. ¹
gěl-asco,	<i>to begin to freeze,</i>	from gělo,		äre.
rüb-esco,	<i>to grow red,</i>	" rübeo,		ěre.
trēm-isco,	<i>to begin to tremble,</i>	" trěmo,		ěre.
obdorm-isco,	<i>to fall asleep,</i>	" obdormio,		Ire.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puěr, puěrasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dürus, düresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed from the Supine stem by adding **ürío** :

ēs-ürío,	<i>to desire to eat,</i>	from ědo,	ěsum.
empt-ürío,	<i>to desire to buy,</i>	" ěmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action.² They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illo** :

cant-illo,	<i>to sing feebly,</i>	from canto. ¹
conscrib-illo,	<i>to scribble,</i>	" conscribo.

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions*.

I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from Nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, as that of the accusative, ablative, or locative :

partim, partly; *forte*, by chance; *jüre*, with right, rightly; *tempöre*, *tempöri*, in time; *hěri*, yesterday.

¹ See foot-note on page 148.

² Sometimes treated as *Denominatives* from supposed Diminutive Nouns.

2. By taking special endings:

1) *ātim*, *tīm*, denoting MANNER: *grex*, *grēg-ātim*, by herds; *fūr*, *fūr-tīm*, by stealth.

2) *ītūs*, denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *caelum*, *cael-ītus*, from heaven; *fundus*, *fund-ītus*, from the foundation.

II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

ē,

tēr,

ītēr.

doctus, *doct-ē*, learnedly; *libēr*, *libēr-ē*, freely; *ēlēgans*, *ēlēg-ter*, elegantly; *āmans*, *āman-ter*, lovingly; *prūdēns*, *pruden-ter*, prudently; *cēlēr*, *celer-ter*, quickly.

1. Stems in *o* take *ē* or *ītēr*; some both *ē* and *ītēr*: *dūrus*, *dur-ē*, *dur-ter*, hardly.

2. Stems in *nt* take *tēr*, but drop the final *t* of the stem. See examples.

3. Adverbs are also formed with the endings *ātim*, *īm*, and *ītūs*: *singūli*, *singul-ātim*, one by one; *passus* (part.) *pass-īm*, everywhere; *divīnus*, *divin-ītus*, divinely.

4. Certain cases of adjectives are often used as adverbs:

1) Neuter accusatives in *e*, *um*, rarely *a*: *fācile*, easily; *multum*, *multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in *a*, *o*, *is*: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in *am*: *bīfāriam*, in two parts; *multifāriam*, in many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hīc*, *illē*, and *istē*, are formed

<i>hīc</i> ,	<i>here</i> ;	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hither</i> ;	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hence</i> .
<i>illīc</i> ,	<i>there</i> ;	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>thither</i> ;	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>thence</i> .
<i>istīc</i> ,	<i>there</i> ;	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>thither</i> ;	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>thence</i> .

IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intrā, *intrō*, within; *ultrā*, *ultrō*, beyond; *in*, *intūs*, within; *sub*, *subtūs*, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements may unite without change of form:¹ *dĕcem-vĭri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *Āb-eo*, to go away.

II. One element, generally the first, may be put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *lĕgis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *lĕgis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element may unite with the second element, or with its stem: *bellĭ-gĕro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gĕro*; *magn-ānimus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *ānimus*; *frūg-ĭ-fĕr*, fruit-bearing, from *frux* and *fĕro*.

1. The final vowel of the stem is often dropped, as in *magn-ānimus*, or changed, as in *bellĭ-gĕro*. Sometimes a connecting vowel is inserted between the parts of a compound: *frūg-ĭ-fĕr*, fruit-bearing.

2. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following euphonic changes.

A, **Āb**, **abs**:—*a* before *m* and *v*; *abs* before *c*, *p*, *t*; *āb* before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *āb-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fĕro* and *au-fūgio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; *d* generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *g* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*: *ād-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fĕro*, *al-lĭgo*; *ac-quĭro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—the original form *anti*, retained in *anti-cĭpo* and *anti-sto*.

Circūm,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Cōm for *cūm*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bĭbo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) *m* generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haero*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) *m* assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-lĭgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) *m* changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fĕro*, *con-gĕro*.

E, **ex**:—*ex* before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; *e* generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fĕro*; *ē-dūco*, *ē-lĭgo*, *ē-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *expecto* or *expecto*.

In,—*n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *in-eo*, *in-dūco*.

¹ Except of course euphonic changes.

Intër,—unchanged, except in *intel-igo*.

Ob,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro, of-ficio, op-pōno*; *ob-ficio, ob-slo*. But **b** is dropped in *ō-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-oleasco, os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

Për,—unchanged, except in *pel-ficio, pel-lūceo, and pe-jëro*.

Post, unchanged except in *pō-moerium* and *pō-mëridianus*.

Pro, pröd:—*pröd* the usual form before a vowel: *pröd-eo, pröd-igo*.

Süb,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*: dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged: *suc-cumbo, su-spicio* for *sub-spicio*; *süb-eo, sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio, sus-pendo*.

Trans drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo, trans-fëro*; *tran-silio* for *trans-silio*; *tra-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-ficio* for *trans-ficio*; *tra-no* for *trans-no*.

3. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit euphonic changes:

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambï, am, or an* before consonants: *amb-igo*; *ambï-dens, am-pūto, an-quitro*.

Dis, di: *dïs* before *c, p, g, t, s* before a vowel, and with assimilation, before *f*; *dï* in most other situations: *dis-curro, dis-pōno, dif-fluo*; *dï-dūco, di-mōveo*. But *dïr* occurs in *dïr-imo* and *dïr-ibeo* (*dïs* and *habeo*), and both *dïs* and *dï* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo, di-judico*.

In,—**n** dropped before *gn*: *i-gnosco*; otherwise like the prep. *in* above.

Por,—**r** assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations unchanged: *pol-liceor, pos-sideo, por-rigo*.

Red, re:—*rëd* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *rë* in other situations: *rëd-eo, rëd-igo, rëd-habeo*; *rë-clädo, rë-vello*.

Sed, se: *sëd* before vowels, *së* before consonants: *sëd-ütio, së-pōno*.

339. In COMPOUND NOUNS, the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

artï-fex,	artist,	from	ars and fäcio.
caprï-cornus,	capricorn,	"	cäpër and cornu.
aequï-noctium,	equinox,	"	aequus and nox.
në-mo,	nobody,	"	në and hōmo.
prö-nömën,	pronoun,	"	prö and nömën.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lätor, legislator*; *juris-consultus, lawyer*.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex, cën, and cöla**, are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fäcio*; *cën* from *cäno*; *cöla* from *cölo*: *artï-fex, artist*; *tübï-cën, trumpeter*; *ägrï-cöla, husbandman*.

340. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective or verb:

<i>lētī-fer,</i>	<i>death-bearing,</i>	from	<i>lētum and fēro.</i>
<i>magn-ānīmus,</i>	<i>magnanimous,</i>	"	<i>magnus and ānīmus.</i>
<i>per-fācīlis,</i>	<i>very easy,</i>	"	<i>pēr and fācīlis.</i>

341. In COMPOUND VERBS the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

<i>aedī-fīco,</i>	<i>to build,</i>	from	<i>aedēs and fācio.</i>
<i>ampli-fīco,</i>	<i>to enlarge,</i>	"	<i>amplūs and fācio.</i>
<i>pātē-fācio,</i>	<i>to open,</i>	"	<i>pāteo and fācio.</i>
<i>bēnē-fācio,</i>	<i>to benefit,</i>	"	<i>bēnē and fācio.</i>
<i>āb-eo,</i>	<i>to go away,</i>	"	<i>āb and eo.</i>

1. When the first part is a verb, the second is generally *fācio*: *pātē-fācio*.

2. When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second is generally *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fīco* and *īgo* of Conj. I.: *aedī-fīco*, *āre*, to build; *nāv-īgo*, *āre*, to sail, from *nāvis* and *āgo*.

3. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ē* generally become *ī*: *hābeo*, *ād-hībeo*; *tēneo*, *con-tīneo*. But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *u*: *carpo*, *dē-cerpo*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Ac* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cīdo*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū*: *plaudo*, *ex-plōdo*; *claudo*, *in-clūdo*.

4. Changes in Prepositions.—See 338, 2 and 3.

342. COMPOUND ADVERBS are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-viam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *hō-diē* (*hoc* and *dīē*), to-day, on this day; *quā-rē*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ād-hūc*, hitherto; *inter-dūm*, sometimes; *in-sūpēr*, moreover.

PART THIRD.
S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dñec eris felix, multos nñmñrñbis ãmicos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends (when?), so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerabis amicos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne, Is he writing? Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum, num, or an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum* :

Utrum taceamne, an praedicem, Shall I be silent, or shall I speak? Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit, Is he not writing? Non for nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides, Do you really not see?*

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit, Is he writing?*

4) Questions with *an*. See 2, 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne*: *Ecquid vides, Do you not see?*

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms :

1) The first clause has *utrum, num, or ne*, and the second *an* :

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours? Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne* :

Eloquar an sileam, Shall I utter it, or keep silence? Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne* :

Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or not? Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or* :

An hoc timemus, Or do we fear this? Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. ANSWERS.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus, vero*, and the like; or if negative, with *non* :

Dixitne causam? Dixit. Did he state the cause? He stated it. Cic. Possumus tūti esse? Non possumus. Can we be safe? We cannot. Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *certe, etiam, ita, vero, certe*, etc., negatively, *non, minime*, etc.

Venitne? Non. Has he come? No. Plaut.

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Justitiam cōle, Cultivate justice. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rēliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris *Cluilius, Albānus rex, moritur* ; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements ; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

Rex decrevit, The king decreed. Nep. *Ego scribo, I write.* Cic. *Video idem vālet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers :

I. AN ADJECTIVE :

Pōpūlus Rōmānus decrevit, The Roman people decreed. Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :

Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Rex Rūtūlōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. *Liber de officiis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. **MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.**—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. **APPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.**—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. **ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.**—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, We are not ignorant of past misfortunes. Virg. *Victōria apud Cnidum, The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiades est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused. Nep. *Tu es testis, You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 382. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, All things are right. Cic.

COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The VERB admits the following modifiers:

I. **OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:**

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiades Athēnas liberāvit, Miltiades liberated Athens. Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lābōri stūdent, They devote themselves to labor. Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rogāvit sententiam, He asked me my opinion. Cic. *Pons iter hostibus dedit, The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. **ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:**

1. *Adverbs:*

Bella feliciter gessit, He waged wars successfully. Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris moritur, He dies (where ?) in this camp. Liv. Vere convenere, They assembled (when ?) in the spring. Liv.

355. II. The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

I. An ADVERB :

Satis humilis est, He is sufficiently humble. Liv.

II. A NOUN in an oblique case :

1. *Genitive*: *Avidi laudis fuerunt, They were desirous of praise. Cic.*
 2. *Dative*: *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age. Cic.*

3. *Ablative*: *Digni sunt amicitia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic.*

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

I. A Sentence as an Element :

"Civis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, "I am a Roman citizen" was heard. Cic. Aliquis dicat mihi: "Nulla habes vitia;" Some one may say to me, "Have you no faults?" Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Rōmānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element :

Traditum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition. Cic. Qualis sit animus, animus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is. Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Hōmērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *traditum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Hōmērus caecus fuit*; and the clause *Qualis sit animus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Qualis est animus*, What is the soul?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

Hoc majores dicere audivi, I have heard that our ancestors said this. Cic.

2) Indirect Questions :

Quid dies forat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions :

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Prinsquam luceat, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects :

Diligi jucundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vivere est cogitare, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plato scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.* Cic. See 576-578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est aliquid aut omnia patienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil laboras, ideo nihil habes ; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consilium, sum enim solus ; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The **CONNECTIVES** generally used in these several classes of compounds are, the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative, disjunctive, adversative, illative, and causal* conjunctions. See 810. But the connective is often omitted.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS** have special connectives. See 846. II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

1. Compound Subjects :

Abŏrigĭnes Trojānique dūcem amīsĕre, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines ducem amiserē* and *Trojānī ducem amiserē*; but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amiserē*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojānique*.

2. Compound Predicates :

Rŏmānī pārant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers :

Athēnas Graeciamque libērāvit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

RULE I—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in **CASE** :¹

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In **GENDER AND NUMBER** Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender :

Usus māgister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Histōria est māgistra (not māgister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

¹ For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs : *evado, exsisto, appereo*, and the like :

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv. *Homo magnus evascerat, He had become (turned out) a great man.* Cic. *Exstitit vindex libertatis, He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like :

Servius rex est declaratus, Servius was declared king. Liv. *Mundus civitas existimatur, The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio* = *appellor* : *Rex audisti, You have been called king* ; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For Predicate Accusative, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *hinc* or *ex numero* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns : *hosti, pro hoste, hinc hostis, ex numero hostium*, for or as an enemy. See also Pred. Gen. 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle :

Declaratus rex Numa, Numa having been declared king. Liv. *Cainio consule, Caius being consul.* Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For Predicate Nominative after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I ; 495, 2.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE :

Cluilius rex moritur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthage atque Numantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted :

Hostis hostem occidere vöui, I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy. Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king. Liv. *Furius puer didicit, Furius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPOSITIVE.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole :

Due reges, ille bello, hic pace civitatem auxerunt, Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace. Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7 ; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

365. KINDRED CASES.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs : the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word ; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action ; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative :²

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. **SUBJECT OMITTED.**—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context :

Discipūlos mōneo, ut stūdia āment, I instruct pupils to love their studies. Quint.

2) When it means men, people : *Fērunt, They say.*

3) When the verb is impersonal : *Pluit, It rains.*

3. **VERB OMITTED.**—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt* :

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

² For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuæ littærae, *Lo your letter (comes).* Cic. Tot sententiæ, *There are (sunt) so many opinions.* Ter. Consul præfectus (est), *The consul set out.* Liv.

1) *Fæcio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil aliud* (amplius, minus, etc.) *quam, nihil præterquam* = merely, *et nihil aliud, finem*, etc.: *Nihil aliud quam steterunt, They merely stood (did nothing other than).* Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: *Recte ille, He does rightly.* Cic.

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic. *Quid est, Cæcilina, Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. *Tuum est, Servi, regnum, The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv. *O dii immortales, O immortal gods.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative:

Audi tu, pöpus Albäna, Hear ye, Alban people. Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 52, 3.

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative:

Quibus, Hector, ab öris expectäte vënis, From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come? Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

I. As the Direct Object of an Action.

II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.

III. In Agreement with another Accusative.

IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.

V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

L. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic. Libéra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pöpuli Römáni sálutem défendíte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The DIRECT OBJECT may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *salutem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vitam vivere, *to live that life.* Cic. Mirum somniare somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servitūtem servire, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Eidem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stūdet unum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem gloriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 5) or can be easily supplied: *mōveo* — *mōveo me*, I move (myself); *vertit* — *vertit se*, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo*, *dūro*, *incipio*, *lazo*, *ruo*, *suppedito*, *turbo*, etc.

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling or Mental State*: *despēro*, to despair of; *doleo*, to grieve for; *gēmo*, to sigh over; *horreo*, to shudder at; *lacrīmo*, to weep over; *moereo*, to mourn over; *miror*, to wonder at; *rīdeo*, to laugh at; *sitio*, to thirst for, etc.

Hōnōres despērat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gēmebant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta ridet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste or Smell*: *oleo*, *sāpio*, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes*. Ter. Oratio rēddet antiquitatem, *The oration smacks of antiquity*. Cic.

4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *præter*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter* :

Murmur concionem pervāsīt, *A murmur went through the assembly*. Liv. Rhēnum transiērunt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine*. Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant senātum, *They stand around the senate*. Cic.

5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object :

Impērare cūpiunt, *They desire to rule*. Just. Sentimus cālere ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot*. Cic.

6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occidērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander*. Passive : Lysander occisus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans*. Nep.

7. ACCUSATIVE IN SPECIAL INSTANCES.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp*. Liv. Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

372. TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.

2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hāmilcārem impēratōrem fecērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander*. Nep. Ancum rēgem pōpulus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king*. Liv. Summum consilium appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate*. Cic. Se praestitit prōpugnātōrem libertātis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum hābuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. **PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*. See 362. 2. (2).

2. **VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: facio, efficio, reddo,—creo, eligo, designo, declāro.

2) *Calling, regarding*: appello, nōmino, vōro, dico,—arbitror, existimo, dūco, iūdico, hābeo, pūto.

3) *Showing*: praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.

3. **ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hōmīnes caecos reddit āvāritia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. **PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.**—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est declārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of **ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING**, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rogāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rogātus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philōsōphia nos res omnes docuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes edoctus fuerat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te celāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. **PERSON AND THING.**—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. **VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.**—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: cēlo—dōceo, edōceo, dēdōceo.

2) *Sometimes*: oro, exoro, rogo, interrōgo, percontor, flāgito, posco, rēposco.

3. **OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS** also occur:

1) *Cēlo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro celāvit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de*: Hoc celāri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Celāri de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Aleibiādi celāri non pōtuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me docet; *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Socrātem fidibus docuit, *He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscēre, *to demand this from me*. Cic. Te illudem de rebus interrogō, *I ask you in regard to the same things*. Cic.

4) *Petō, postūlo, and quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānis pētērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*. Caes.

4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE as Accusative of thing:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise*. Cic.

5. A NEUTER PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation*. Cic. Ea mōnēmur, *We are admonished of these things*. Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cūpias trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro*. Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervēhor ostia Pantāgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia*. Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco*, etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Gāleam induitur, *He puts on his helmet*. Virg. Inūtile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on his useless sword*. Virg. Virgīnes longam indūtiae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes*. Liv.

II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plātōnem fērent in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic.

Plātōnem is the subject of *venisse*.

III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic. Apud Hērōdōtum, patrem histōriae, *in Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 433.

2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Rōmulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pēdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the Ablative : Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the Accusative with Preposition : Per annos vīginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibūs passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of* : Tres sunt viae ad Mūtīnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zāmam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab* :

A Diānio ad Sīnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppidum* with a Preposition :

Pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives *dōmum*, *dōmos*, *rus*:

Scipio dōmum rēductus est, *Scipio was conducted home*. Cic. *Dōmos abducti, led to their homes*. Liv. *Rus evōlāre, to hasten into the country*. Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātōna confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos*. Cic. *Pervēnit Chersōnēsūm*, *He went to the Chersonesus*. Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiā rēdit, *He returns into Asia*. Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prōfūgit, *He fled to Egypt*. Cic. *Italiā vēnit*, *He came to Italy*. Virg. *Ibimus Afros*, *We shall go to the Africans*. Virg. *Lāvīnia vēnit litōra*, *He came to the Lavinian shores*. Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clamor coelo (for *ad coelum*), *The shout ascends to heaven*. Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.

380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Cāpita vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. *Nūbe hūmēros āmictus*, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud*, Hor. *Miles fractus membra lābōre*, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. *Aenēas os deo sīmilis*, *Aeneas like a god in appearance*. Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem*, *vicem*, *nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempōris*, *id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id genus*, *omne genus*, *quod genus* (for *ejus generis*, etc.), etc.; also of *secus*, *libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *quid* (454, 2), *multum*, *eumumum*, *cetera*, *religua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maximam partem lacte vivunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk*. Caes. *Nihil mōti sunt*, *They were not at all moved*. Liv. *Locus id tempōris vacuus erat*, *The place was at this time vacant*. Cic. *Aliquid id genus scribere*, *to write something of this kind*. Cic. *Quaerit, quid possint*, *He inquires how powerful they are*. Caes. *Quid venis*, *Why do you come?*

V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:

Heu me miserum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me miserum, *Me miserable!*¹ Cic. O fallacem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deorum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. O, *Eheu, heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement: En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuas litteras, *Lo your letter (comes)!* Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *he, vae*, and sometimes after *ecce, en, hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that to or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempori cedit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuerant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo paret, *The world obeys God.*² Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*³ Cic. Nobis vita dāta est, *Life has*

¹ Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 78

² Is subject to God.

³ Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostibus dedit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitatibus suis scripserunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Mūrum urbi circumdedit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundō, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, intercludo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative : thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (879. and 879. 4) :

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnimus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clamor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, in *defence of*, in *behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro* ; for the *sake of*, for the *purpose of*, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mōri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dimicāre pro libertāte, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sātis in usum, *enough for use.* Liv.

8. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist* ; also, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like :

Sibi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nōcēre altēri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni placuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displicet Tullō, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cūpīditātibus impērāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo parēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servire, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostibus resistēre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sibi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcēre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscēre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Minitans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci amicis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuadēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. OTHER CASES.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dēlecto*, *jūvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, etc.; *fido* and *confido* generally the Ablative (419):

Mārium jūvit, *He helped Marius*. Nep.

2. SPECIAL VERBS.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūdo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to; *sātisfacio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. ACCUSATIVE OR DATIVE with a difference of signification: *cāvēre āliquem*, to ward off some one; *cāvēre ālicui*, to care for some one; *consūlere āliquem*, to consult, etc.; *ālicui*, to consult for; *mētūere*, *tīmēre āliquem*, to fear, etc.; *ālicui*, to fear for; *prospicere*, *prōvidere āliquid*, to foresee; *ālicui*, to provide for; *temperare*, *mōdērāri āliquid*, to govern, direct; *ālicui*, to restrain, put a check upon; *temperare (sibi) ab āliquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ādūlor*, to flatter; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. DATIVE RENDERED FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing*, *dissenting*, *repelling*, *taking away*: *diffēro*, *discrepo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *arceo*, etc.

Differre culvis, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrepāre istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentire*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. DATIVE RENDERED WITH, occurs with *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, *jungo*, *certo*, *decerto*, *lucto*, *altercor*, and sometimes *facio* (434. 2):

Sēvēritātem miscēre cōmitāti, to unite severity with affability. Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions:

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super:

Adsum āmicis, *I am present with my friends*. Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, *It cleaves to the earth*. Sen. *Vōluptāti inhaerēre*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae*, *He participated in the battle*. Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Libertāti ōpes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpulo praesunt*, *They rule the people*. Cic. *Succumbēre dōlōribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri*, *He survived his father*. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative: *Se oppōsuit hostibus*, *He opposed himself to the enemy*. Cic.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially *ad*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl.: *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*, *acquiesco*, *sūpercedo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Caesūri dēfuit, *This failed (was wanting to) Caesar*. Caes.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition:

Adire aras, to approach the altars. Cic. *Ad consules adire, to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

In oratore inest scientia, In the orator is knowledge. Cic.

387. The Dative of Possessor is used with the verb *Sum*:

Mihi est nōverca, I have (there is to me) a stepmother. Virg. *Fonti nōmen Arēthūsa est, The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arēthusa.* Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen datur*, etc.:

Scipioni Africāno cognōmen fuit, Scipio had the surname Africanus. Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipionē*.

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs:

Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi, I have the name of Mercury. Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlens, cūpiens*, or *involens* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

Quibus bellum vōlentibus erat, They liked the war (it was to them wishing). Tac.

388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus*:

Suum cuique incommōdum ferendum est, Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble. Cic.

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, I have a plan long since formed. Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHI with the Perfect Participle (388, 1):

Bellum habuit indictum, He had a war (already) declared. Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

Est a vōbis consulendum, Measures must be taken by you. Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdum ferendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consilium captum est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person *BY* whom and *FOR* (to) whom the action is performed:

Hōnesta bōnis vīris quaserantur, *Honorable things are sought by good men, i. e., for themselves.* Cic.

4. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Non intelligor ulli, *I am not understood by any one.* Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At tibi vēnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me.* Cic. Ad illa mihi intendat ānimum, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. Quid mihi Celsus āgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with VOLO and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With VOLO: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, *What does avarice mean, or what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *hei, vae* and some others: *Hei mihi, ah me.* Virg. *Vae tibi, Woe to you.* Ter. See 381. 8. 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—OCCUR with a few verbs :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, *Avarice is an evil to men (lit. is to men for an evil).* Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *It is a care to me.* Cic. Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmīno fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner.* Cic. Vēnit Atticis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. Hoc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice).* Cic. Iis subsidio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio rēliquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp (lit. to the camp for a defence).* Caes. Pēricles agros suos dōno rei publicae dedit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present (lit. for a present).* Just.

1. Verbs with TWO DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying to *be, become, go*, and the like; *sum, fio*, etc.

2) Transitives signifying to *give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose*, and the like: *do, dōno, dāco, hābeo, mitto, rēlinquo, tribuo, verto*, etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 371. 6.

2. ONE DATIVE OMITTED.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun:

Ea sunt ūsul, These things are of use (for use). Caes. Tu illi pāter es, You are a father to him. Tac.

8. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto*—*audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385):

Dicto sum audiens, I am listening to the word, I obey. Plaut. Nōbis dicto audiens est, He is obedient to us. Cic. Sometimes dicto obediens is used in the same way: Māgistro dicto obediens, obedient to his master. Plaut.

II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae solum omnibus carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all. Cic. Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time. Cic. Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age. Cic. Cānis similibus lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf. Cic. Naturae accommodatum, adapted to nature. Cic. Graeciae utile, useful to Greece. Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.

Such are: *accommodatus, aequalis, alienus, amicus and inimicus, aptus, carus, cecillus and difficilis, fidelis and infidelis, finitimus, gratus and ingratus, idoneus, iucundus and injucundus, molestus, necessarius, notus and ignotus, noxius, par and dispar, perniciosus, propinquus, proprius, salutarius, similis and dissimilis, vicinus, etc.*

2. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1) *Accusative with a Preposition*: (1) *in, erga, adversus* with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile, etc.*, and (2) *ad*, to denote the *object* or *end* for which, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined, etc.*:

P̄rindulgens in patrem, very kind to his father. Cic. Multas ad res p̄rutilis, very useful for many things. Cic. Ad cōmilitem p̄rclivis, inclined to affability. Cic. P̄rōnus ad luctum, inclined to mourning. Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *p̄r̄pior, proximus*:

P̄r̄pior montem, nearer the mountain. Sall. Proximus mare, nearest to the sea. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition*:

Alienum a vita mea, foreign to my life. Ter. Hōmīne alienissimum, most foreign to man. Cic. Ei cum Roscio communis, common to him and Roscius (with Roscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive*: (1) with *proprius, communis, contrarius*; (2) with *similis*,

dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, *par* and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*, and a few others:

Pöpuli Römāni est propria libertas, *Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people*. Cic. Alexandri similis, *like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. Dispar sui, *unlike itself*. Cic. Cujus pāres, *like whom*. Cic. Amicissimus hōm-inum, *the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. Idem occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, *He does the same as kill, or as he who kills*. Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. VERBAL NOUNS.—Justitia est obtemperatio lēgibus, *Justice is obedience to laws*. Cic. Sibi responsio, *replying to himself*. Cic. Opulento hōmīni servitus dūra est, *Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard*. Plaut.

II. ADVERBS.—Congruenter nātūrae vivēre, *to live in accordance with nature*. Cic. Sibi constanter dicere, *to speak consistently with himself*. Cic. Proxime hostium castris, *next to the camp of the enemy*. Caes.

1. DATIVE WITH NOUNS.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tēgimenta galeis milites facere jubet, *He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets*. Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegimenta*. In conspectum venerat hostibus, *He had come in sight of the enemy*. Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venerat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. DATIVE WITH ADVERBS.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huc una* — *una cum hoc*, with him.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *on account of*, etc.:

Beneficii grātia, *gratitude for a favor*. Cic. Lāborum fuga, *escape from labors*. Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv. Vir consilii magni, *a man of great prudence*. Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following :

I. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor* :

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*. Cic. Pavor Numīdārum, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv. Xēnōphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed :

Amor glōriæ, *the love of glory*. Cic. Mēmōria mālōrum, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

III. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken :

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vitæ pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sāpientissimus, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

1. NOSTRUM and VESTRUM.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri*.

2. USE.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil* ; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc. : *mōdius*, *lēgio*, *talentum*, and any nouns used partitively :

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses*. Liv. Mēdimnum tritici, *a bushel of wheat*. Cic. Pēcūniæ talentum, *a talent of money*. Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius*. Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively :

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom*. Liv. Sāpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men*. Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vиви qui (not *quōrum*) duo sūperunt, *the living, of whom two survive*. Cic.

(3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ūter, neuter*, etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plūrium, minus, minimum, tantum, quantum*, etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consūlum alter, *one of the consuls*. Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these*. Nep. Gallōrum fortissimī, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes. Id temporis, *that (of) time*. Cic. Multum ōpērae, *much (of) service*. Cic. Hōminū cuncti, *all of the men*. Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hōmīnes, *all men*. Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consūlum* *alter* above.

(4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affatim, nimis, parum, partim, quoad, sātis*, etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ibi*, etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo*; (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affatim, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lūcis nimis, *too much (of) light*. Ovid. Sāpientiae parum, *little (of) wisdom*. Sall. Partim cōpiarum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quoad ejus facere pōtest, *as far as (as much of it as) he is able to do*. Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic. Huc arrogantiae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac. Maxime omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

3. *Loci* and *locorum* occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intērea lōci, *in the mean time*. Ter. Adhuc lōcorum, *hitherto*. Plaut.

4. For *id gēnus* = *ejus gēneris, sēcus, libra*, etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality*, including *value, price, size, weight, age*, etc.

Vir maximi consilii, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mitis ingēnii jūvēnis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis magni pretii, *a garment of great value*. Cic. Exsiliū dēcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years*. Nep. Cōrōna parvi pondēris, *a crown of small weight*. Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmodi* = *hujus modi*: *tridui*, from *tres dies*; *bidui*, from *duo (bis) dies*. With *tridui* and *bidui*, via or *spatium* is sometimes omitted: *Aberrant bidui*, *They were two days' journey distant*. Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363):

Virtus continentiae, the virtue of self-control. Cic. *Verbum voluptatis*, the word (of) pleasure. Cic. *Oppidum Antiöchiaë*, the city of Antioch. Cic. *Tellus Ausöniæ*, the land of Ausonia. Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, temple, *discipulus*, hōmo, *jūvenis*, puer, etc.; *causa*, grātia, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jōvis (sc. *aedem*), near the temple of Jupiter. Liv. *Hannibal annōrum novem* (sc. puer), Hannibal a boy nine years of age. Liv. *Nāves sui commōdi* (causa) *fēcērāt*, He had built vessels for his own advantage. Caes. *Conferre vītam Trēbonii cum Dōlābellæ* (sc. *vīta*), to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella. Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: *Nātūra hōminis bēlvis* (for *beluārum naturæ*) *antecēdit*, The nature of man surpasses (that of) the brutes. Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son*, *daughter*, *husband*, *wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrūbal Giscōnis, Gisco's Hasdrubal, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco*. Liv. *Hectōris Andrōmachæ*, Hector's Andromache, or *Andromache the wife of Hector*. Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective:

Memmii ōdium pōtentiae, Memmius's hatred of power. Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse*, *solus*, *ūnus*, *omnis*:

Tua ipsius amicitia, your own friendship. Cic. *Meum solius peccātum*, my fault alone. Cic. *Nōmen meum absentis*, my name while absent. Cic.

Here *ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *solus* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellica glōria = *belli glōria*, the glory of war. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, the wife of Hector. Virg.

3. The **POSSESSIVE** is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

Mea dñmus, my house. Cic. Fāma tua, your fame. Cic.

4. **CASE WITH PREPOSITION.**—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen.; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with *in, erga, adversus*:—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter, ante, āpud*, or the Ablative with *ex, de, in*:

Odium in hñmñm gñnus, hatred of or towards the race of men. Cic. Erga vos āmor, love towards you. Cic. Inter rēges ōpñlentissñmus, the most wealthy of (among) kings. Sen. Unus ex vñris, one of the heroes. Cic.

5. A **DATIVE** depending on the **VERB** is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

Urbi fundāmenta jācēre, to lay the foundations of (for) the city. Liv. Caesāri ad pñdes projicēre, to cast at the feet of Caesar, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise. Cic. Otii cñpñdus, desirous of leisure. Liv. Amans sui virtus, virtue fond of itself. Cic. Effñciens vñluptātis, productive of pleasure. Cic. Glñriæ mñmor, mindful of glory. Liv.

1. **FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.**—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of, in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. **ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.**—The most common are

1) Verbals in *ax* and participles in *ans* and *ens* used adjectively:

Virtñtñm fñrax, productive of virtues. Liv. Tñnax prñpñsñti, tenacious (steadfast) of purpose. Hor. Amans patriæ, loving (fond of) his country. Cic. Fñgiens lābñris, shunning labor. Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries:

(1) **DESIRE, AVERSION**—*āvidus, cñpñdus, stñdñdus; fastidñdus, etc.*; sometimes *aemñlus* and *invidus*, which also take the Dative:

Contentññis cñpñdus, desirous of contention. Cic. Sāpñntiæ stñdñdus, studious of (student of) wisdom. Cic.

(2) **KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION** with their contraries—*gnñdrus,*

ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvidus, prudens, imprudens; p̄ritus, imp̄ritus, r̄udis, ins̄uitus; m̄mor, imm̄mor, etc.:

Rei gn̄rus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic. Pr̄dens rei milit̄ris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. P̄ritus belli, *skilled in war.* Nep. Ins̄uitus l̄bōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Gl̄riæ m̄mor, *mindful of glory.* Liv. Imm̄mor b̄n̄ficii, *forgetful of kindness.* Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULLNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affinis, consors, exsors, exsors, particeps; plenus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, v̄acuu; p̄tens, imp̄tens, compos, impos, etc.:*

Affinis culpae, *sharing the fault.* Cic. R̄tiōnis particeps, *endowed with (sharing) reason.* Cic. R̄tiōnis exsors, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Vita m̄tus pl̄na, *a life full of fear.* Cic. Mei p̄tens sum, *I am master of myself.* Liv. Virt̄tis compos, *capable of virtue.* Cic.

3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

M̄nifestus r̄rum c̄pit̄alium, *convicted of capital crimes.* Sall. Noxiu conj̄r̄tiōnis, *guilty of conspiracy.* Tac.

2) *Stimilis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *aliēnus, commūnis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus:*

Aliēnus dignit̄tis, *inconsistent with dignity.* Cic. Viri proprius, *characteristic of a man.* Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion or feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—*in, in respect of, for*, especially *animi* and *ingēni*, with many adjectives:

Anxiu p̄tentiæ, *anxious for power.* Tac. Lassu milit̄iæ, *tired of military service.* Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ān̄mi, *afflicted in mind.* Liv. Anxiu ān̄mi, *anxious in mind.* Sall. Int̄ger ævi, *whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth.* Virg.

4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: M̄nus s̄b̄l̄tis Ævidæ, *hands ready for sudden events.* Tac. Ins̄uitus m̄r̄ibus R̄m̄anis, *unaccustomed to Roman manners.* Liv. F̄c̄in̄d̄ri mens conscia, *a mind conscious of crime.* Cic.

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: Ins̄uitus ad pugnam, *unaccustomed to battle.* Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, *productive for all things.* Plin. Avidus in n̄vas res, *eager for new things.* Liv.

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: Pr̄dens in j̄re civ̄li, *learned in civil law.* Cic. R̄dis in j̄re civ̄li, *uninstructed in civil law.* Cic. His de r̄bus conscius, *aware of those things.* Cic. V̄acuu de d̄fens̄r̄ibus, *destitute of defenders.* Caes. C̄ris v̄acuu, *free from cares.* Cic. R̄f̄ertus b̄nis, *replete with blessings.* Cic.

6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

Sibi conscii culpæ, *conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

I. Predicate Genitive.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive :

*Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to the enemy.*¹ Liv. *Sénatus Hannibális erat, The senate was Hannibal's, i. e., in his interest.* Liv. *Jūdicis est verum sequi, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*² Cic. *Parvi pretii est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hominis est = humanum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stulti est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sapientis est* (for *sapiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE OR POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of* :

Haec hostium erant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy. Liv. *Est imperatoris superare, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE :

Fies nobilium fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains. Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight, etc.* :

Summae facultatis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability. Cic. *Opera magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *pretii* understood; but sometimes *pretii* is expressed :

¹ Lit. *were of the enemy, or were the enemy's.*

² Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi pretiū est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: *Vendo frumentum pluris, I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis*, *flocci*, *nitili*, *pili* and a few others:

Non flocci pendere, not to care a straw (lock of wool) for. Plaut.

3. *Boni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi boni facere* and *boni consilire*, to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

Haec hostium erant, These things were the enemy's. Liv. *Oram Romanæ ditionis fecit, He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*videor*, *habeo*, *dūco*, *pūto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hominis videtur, It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man. Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not tui) videre, It is your duty to see. Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium*, *Munus*, *Negotium*, *Proprium*:

Senatus officium est, It is the duty of the senate. Cic. *Fuit proprium populi, It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic*. See 428.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used

I. With *miserere* and *miserescere*:

Miserere laborum, Pity the labors. Virg. *Miserescite regis, Pity the king.* Virg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *remiscor*, and *obliscor*:

Meminit praeteritorum, He remembers the past. Cic. *Oblitus sum mei, I have forgotten myself.* Ter. *Flagitiorum recordari, to recollect base deeds.* Cic. *Reminisci virtutis, to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With *refert* and *interest*:

Illorum refert, It concerns them. Sall. *Interest omnium, It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *refert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *memor* and *immemor* (399. 2. 2).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Venit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *remiscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem, The recollection of Plato comes to my mind, or I recollect Plato. Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non venit in mentem pugna, Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

1. The Accusative: *Memineram Paulum, I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *recordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos recordari, to recall triumphs. Cic. *Ea reminiscere, Remember those things.* Cic.

2. The Ablative with *De*: *Recordare de ceteris, Bethink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *recordor*, and occurs also with *memini*, though that verb takes the *Acc.* of a *contemporary*.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Refert* and *Interest* is as follows:

1. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted

1) By the Genitive as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive* :

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intērest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rēfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with* or *without Ad* ; but rarely, and chiefly with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person :

Quid rēfert viventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me.* Plaut.

2. The *SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE*, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun :

Intērest omnium recte facēre, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hōc intērest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The *DEGREE OF INTEREST* is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2) :

Vestrā maxime intērest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intērest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The *OBJECT* or *END* for which it is important is expressed by the *Accusative with ad*, rarely by the *Dative* :

Ad hōnōrem nostrum intērest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive :

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ēgeo*, *indigeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitiōnis indiget, *Virtus requires exercise.* Cic. Auxilii ēgere, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Anīmi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Disrūctor ānīmi, *I am troubled in mind.* Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2) , *pōtior*, *ādīpiscor*, *regno* :

Siciliāe pōtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum ādeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvīt pōpūlōrum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstīneo*, *dēcipio*, *dēsino*, *dēsisto* ; *mīror* :

Abstīnēre frārum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lābōrum dēcipitur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsīne quērēlārū, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsīstere pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sātāgo* and *Sātāgito* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4) , and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti* :

Rōrum sātāgēre, *to be occupied with (have enough of) business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 363 and 363. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*

III. *Miseret, Poenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te amicitiae commōnēfacit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nēcessitātis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Viros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvitatē eum convincēre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriam eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos misēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consilii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiā meae pudet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of reminding, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of accusing, etc., the crime, charge, and with *misēret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfacio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The Accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The Ablative with *de*, *mōneo* generally so:

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The Genitive with *nōmine* or *crimine*:

Nōmine conjuratiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The Accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plant.

3) The Ablative alone or with a preposition, generally *de*:

De pēcūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the Punishment may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :Căptis condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.(1) *Voti damnāri*, *to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish*.2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild-beasts*. Suet.3) By the *Ablative* ; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :Căpte damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nil* :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit*, *commiserescit*, *miseretur*, *commiseretur*. Like *Taedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed :
Me tui pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum*, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object :Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING :

Eum culpae liberāre, *to free him from blame*, i. e., *to acquit him of fault*. Liv. So *purgo*, *decipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

Multitudinem religiōnis implevit, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely :

Te angis ānīmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Pridie* and *Postridie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

Pridie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day*. Caes. *Postridie ejus diēi*, *on the day after that day*. Caes. *Virtūtis ergo*, *on account of virtue*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tēnus*, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

- I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*
- II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*
- III. *Miseret, Poenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te amicitiae commōnēfacit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites necessitatis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvītatis eum convincēre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriā eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos mīseret, *We pity them (it moves our pity of them).* Cic. Consillii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiā meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of reminding, etc., that to which the attention is called ; with verbs of accusing, etc., the crime, charge, and with *miseret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive :

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfacio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The Accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives :

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The Ablative with *de*, *mōneo* generally so :

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The Genitive with *nōmine* or *crīmīne* :

Nōmine conjūratiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The Accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely :

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The Ablative alone or with a preposition, generally *de* :

De pēcūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the Punishment may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :

Cāptis condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

(1) *Voti damnārī*, *to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish*.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild-beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative* ; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :

Cāpīte damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil* :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit, commiserescit, miseretur, commiseretur*. Like *Taedet* are used *pertaedet, pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed :
Me tui pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum, It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object :

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, disgusted with his own inaction. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING :

Eum culpae liberāre, *to free him from blame*, i. e., *to acquit him of fault*. Liv. So *purgo, decipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

Multitudinem religiōnis implevit, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely :

Te angis ānīmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Pridie* and *Postridie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

Pridie ejus diēi, on the day before that day. Caes. *Postridie ejus diēi, on the day after that day*. Caes. *Virtutis ergo, on account of virtue*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tēnus, as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from, by, in, with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.

III. Ablative of Time.

IV. Ablative of Characteristic.

V. Ablative of Specification.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars utilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE designates that *by which*, *by reason of which*, *because of which*, *in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo iudicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia*, *jussu*, *impulsu*, *monitu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *doleo*, *gaudeo*, *glōrior*, *libōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *afficio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon*, *abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Afficio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hōnōre afficere* = *hōnōrāre*, to honor; *admirationē afficere* = *admirārī*, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Amicitia propter se expetitur, Friendship is sought for itself. Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa*, *gratia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu*, *rēgātū*, *mandātū*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—on account of, because of, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob*, *propter*, *de*, *ex*, *prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem fecit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

Cupiditate in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

8. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*mōre*, *ordine*, *rātione*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persarum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *to hear in silence.* Liv.

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner*: *per vim*, violently.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est Thēbēnis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Numidis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv.

Per Fabricium, *by means of (through the agency of) Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of Agent. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a voluptate, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortuna datam occasionem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu profectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.**416. PRICE** is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victōria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquaginta talentis aestimāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti mīnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. **THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE** is used
 - 1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ēmo, vendo, conduco, ūco, vāneo*, etc.
 - 2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, liceo, sum*, etc.
 - 3) With verbs of valuing, *aestimo*, etc.
 - 4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vānālis*, etc.
2. **EXCHANGING.**—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling* :
Pāce bellum mūtāvit, He exchanged war for peace. Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum* : *Exsiliū patria mūtāvit, He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.
3. **ADVERBS OF PRICE** are sometimes used : *bene ēmere*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price ; *cāre aestimāre*, to value at a high price.
4. **GENITIVE OF PRICE.** See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.**417. Comparatives** without **QUAM** are followed by the Ablative :

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est melius bonitāte, *What is better than goodness ?* Cic.

1. **COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM** are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia minor quam Britānnia existimātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britānnia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terribilior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. **ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.**—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Scimus solem majorem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amicitia, qua nihil melius habemus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*qua*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtute* and *bonitate* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *propter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: *Ante alios immānior*, *more monstrous than (before) the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major*, *minor*, etc.:

Tecum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: *nātus plus triginta annos*, *having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major triginta annos nātus*, *major triginta annis*, *major quam triginta annorum*, or *major triginta annorum.*

4. ATQUE OR AC FOR QUAM occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose: *Arctius atque hederā*, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit alia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*by* *in* *one*, *spe*, *aequo*, *justo*, *solito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victoria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe venit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiorem mensem faciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Biduo me antecessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum robustior*, *much more robust.*

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (§78. 2), and the Abl. with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (§27).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.**419. The Ablative is used**

I. With **utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor**, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. Magna est praeda pōtita, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. Vescimur bestiis, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With **fido, confido, nitor**, and **innitor**:

Nemo pōtest fortunae stābilitate confidēre, *No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune.* Cic. Sālus veritate nititur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With **VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT**:

Non ēgeo mēdicīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. Vācāre culpa, *to be free from fault.* Cic. Villa ābundat lacte, cāseo, melle; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. Urbs nūda praesīdio, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. Virtūte praeditus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus**, and **frētus**:

Digni sunt āmicītia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. Nātūra parvo contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic. Frētus āmicis, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auctōritāte tua nobis opus est, *We need (there is to us a need of) your authority.* Cic. Usus est tua mihi opēra, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. **EXPLANATION.**—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *utor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruor*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido, confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. **ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.**—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hōnōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. Armis nāves ōnērat, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. Oculis se privat, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio, cūmulo, compleo, impleo, imbuo, instruo, ōnēro, orno*, etc.—*orbo, privo, spolio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative* and *Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. **DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.**—*Opus est* and *usus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle:

Consulto opus est, There is need of deliberation. Sall. *Opus fuit Hirtio convento, There was need of meeting Hirtius.* Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *opus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nobis opus est, We need a leader, or a leader is necessary (a necessity) for us. Cic. *Temporis opus est, There is need of time.* Liv. *Opus est cibum, There is need of food.* Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est te valere, It is necessary that you be well. Cic. *Opus est ut lavem, It is necessary for me to bathe (that I bathe).* Plaut. *Dictu est opus, It is necessary to be told.* Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *us* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing:

Me utitur patri, He will find (use) me a father. Ter.

2) *Fido, confido*, and *innitor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

Virtuti confidere, to confide in virtue. Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nitor* and *innitor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus salūtis, worthy of safety. Plaut. *Rei frētus, relying upon the thing.* Liv. *Vicāre ab opēre, to be free from work.* Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *potior*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative, (45, 2):

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In noetris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africa, *from Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic. See 48, 4.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition :

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition :

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lōco, lōcis, parte, partibus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mārī*, and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus* :

Allquid lōco pōnere, *to put anything in its place*. Cic. Terra mārīque, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece*. Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives :
Hoc libro, *in this book*. Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier :
Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry :

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds*. Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse*. Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast :

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome*. Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant : Discessit a Brundisio, *He departed from Brundisium*, i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea*. Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia*. Liv.

2. LOCATIVE.—The original Locative, denoting the PLACE IN WHICH, was blended with the Ablative, except in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, where it still remains distinct, though with the same form as the Genitive. A few traces of it also remain in the Singular of the Third Declension, where it ends in *i*. See 62, IV. 3.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur :

1) *Ablative by Attraction* :

In monte Albano Læviniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa*. Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Locative *dōmi* (424, 2) admits a *possessive* or *adjective* :

Dōmi, suae, *at his home*. Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbe, oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Loc. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep. :

In oppido Antiochiaē, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic. In oppido Cītio, *in the town Cītium*. Nep. Albae, in urbe opportuna, *at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

1. Many names of Islands :

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus*. Nep. Dēlo prōficiēscitur, *He proceeds from Delos*. Cic.

2. Dōmus, rus, and the Locatives hūmī, militīae, and bellī :

Rūri āgere vitam, *to spend life in the country*. Liv. Dōmi militīaeque, *at home and in the field*. Cic. Dōmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home*. Cic.

3. The Locative of other nouns also occurs :

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns :

Rōmae Nūmidiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia*. Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names, and rarely also the Locatives ārenae, fōci, terrae, vicīniae :

Dōmum Chersōnēsi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus*. Nep. Truncum rēliquit ārenae, *He left the body in the sand*. Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audīvi de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father*. Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic. Hunc a tuis ārīs arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars*. Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country*. Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material*, etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying; *to abstain from, be distant from, etc.*

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from, and the like*: *arceo, abstineo, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libero, pello, prohibeo, removeo, solvo, etc.* :

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *alieno, furor, etc.* See 385. 4.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage or birth*—*gēnitus, nātus, ortus, etc.* :

Jove nātus, son of Jupiter. Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *libero*, which is used both with and without a preposition :

Somno solvi, to be released from sleep. Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7) : *Aliquem culpae liberāre, to free one from blame, i. e., acquit him. Liv.*

3) With *Moveo* before the ablatives—*lōco, sēdātū* and *tribū* :

Signum mōvĕre lōco, to move the standard from the place. Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsīmo anno est mortuus, He died in his eightieth year. Cic. *Vĕre convĕnĕre, They assembled in the spring. Liv.* *Nātālī die suo, on his birth-day. Nep.* *Hiĕme et aēstāte, in winter and summer. Cic.*

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH *IN* is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempōre, under such circumstances. Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proximis dĕcem, in the next ten days. Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in diē*, twice in the day; *in puĕrītia*, in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: *De mēdia nocte, in the middle of the night. Caes.* *Inter annos quattuordecim, in (within) fourteen years. Caes.*

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time *within* which or *after* which: *paucis diēbus, within (or after) a few days.*

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative :

Abhinc annos trécentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since. Cic. *Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since.* Cic. *Hómērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before.* Cic. *Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his (illis) diēbus,* means *in these (those) few days.*

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus : five years after = *quinque annis post,* or *quinto anno post* ; or *post quinque annos,* or *post quintum annum* ; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis,* etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post,* may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam* :

Quantum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned. Nep. *Nōno anno postquam, nine years after.* Nep. *Sexto anno quam erat expulsus, six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

4. THE ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE OF QUAM may be used for *postquam* : *Quātrīduo, quo occisus est, four days after he was killed.* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing :

Summa virtūte adōlescens, a youth of the highest virtue. Caes. *Cātilina ingēnio mālō fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum,* and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used :

Urī sunt spēcīe taurī, The urus is of the appearance of a bull. Caes.

3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 396. IV.

4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities ; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsīlaus nōmīne, non pōtestātē fuit rex, *Agēsilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altēro pēde, lame in one foot. Nep. Mōribus sīmīles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true : thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name* : *similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See 380.

VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE :

Servio regnante vīgērunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgibus exactis, consūles creati sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sērēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cānīnio consūle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession,* etc.

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object* :

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rēligiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdītis rēbus omnībus, *tāmen,* etc., *Though all things are lost, still,* etc. Cic. Equitū prae-mis-
so, subseqūebātur, *Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nisi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. AN INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Andito Dārium mōvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incerto quid vitārent, intēriērunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE OR ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certāto, pervicit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUISQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sibi quisque pētentibus, *while many sought, each for himself*. Sall.

VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house*. Liv. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, āpud, circa, circum, circēter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lucem, *before light*. Cic. Apud concilium, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circa fōrum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contra nātūrā, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Sēcundum nātūrā, *according to nature*. Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps*. Cic.

1. Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōpior* and *proximus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prōpior montem, *nearer to the mountain*. Sall. Proximus mare, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 871. 4. and 874. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in*: Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps*.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus.

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiōcho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fōro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition :

Abire māgistrātū, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used :

De vīta decēdēre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Decēdēre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fācio*, *Flo*, or *Sum*, as follows :

Quid hoc hōmine fācias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense :

Quid hūc hōmini fācias, *What are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *ta*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case :

Collo tēnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it : *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative : *quōcum*, *quibuscum*.

435. THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE IS USED WITH

In, sub, subter, sūper :

In Asiam prōfugit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tōgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdīne, *under a tortoise or shed*. Virg. Sūper Nūmīdiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sūper re scribam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (*whither?*), *into Asia*; In Itālia (*where?*), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative : *prōpius*, *proxīme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsūper* :

Prōpius perīcūlum (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pēdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative : *pālam*, *prōcul*, *simul* (poetic) :

Pālam pōpūlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prōcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Simul his, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative : *clam*, *insūper* :

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plant. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind. Cic. Vērae amicitiae, true friendships. Cic. Māgister optimus, the best teacher. Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. **ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.**—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. **AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.**—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun, clause, infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, Who is more illustrious? Cic. Certum est liberos amāri, It is certain that children are loved. Quint. See 42, III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. **NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.**—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc. or Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, Death is the last (thing). Cic.

5. **NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.**—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum op̄erae (for multa op̄era), much service (much of service). Cic. Id temporis, that time. Cic. Vāna rerum (for vānae res), vain things. Hor.

6. **CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.**—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre parāti, a part (some), prepared to contend. Virg. Nōbis (for me, 446, 2), praesente, we (I) being present. Plaut. Dēmōsthēnes cum cētēris erant expulsi, Demosthenes with the others had been banished. Nep.

7. **AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.**—See 462.

8. **AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.**—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for majōrum) initia rerum, the beginnings of greater things. Liv. Cursus justī (justus) amnis, the regular course of the river. Liv.

439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others :

Castor et Pollux visi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen. Cic. Téméritas ignōrātiōque vitiōsa est, Rashness and ignorance are bad. Cic.

1. The **ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE** generally agrees with the nearest noun :
Agri omnes et mēria, all lands and seas. Cic.

2. **DIFFERENT GENDERS.**—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons* : then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine : *Pāter et mēter mortui sunt, Father and mother are dead. Ter.*

2) *Persons and Things* : then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person : *Rex rēgiāque classis prōfecti sunt, The king and the royal fleet set out. Liv.*

3) *Things* : then the adjective is generally neuter : *Hōndres, victōriae fortuīta sunt, Honors and victories are accidental (things). Cic.*

3. **NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.**—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter :

Lābor et dōlor sunt finītima, Labor and pain are kindred (things). Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, Night and plunder detained the enemy. Sall.

4. **TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.**—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun :

Prima et vicēsīma lēgiōnes, the first and the twentieth legions. Tac.

So in proper names : *Cnaeus et Publius Scipiōnes, Cnaeus and Publius Scipio. Cic.*

440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective : *aes dliēnum grande, a great debt.* Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it : *multas et magnas tempestūtes, many great emergencies.*

441. Adjectives are often used substantively : *docti*, the learned ; *multi*, many persons ; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things : *fortes*, the brave ; *divites*, the rich ; *paupēres*, the poor ; *multi*, many : *pauci*, few ; *omnes*, all ; *mei*, my friends ; *utilia*, useful things ; *mea, nostra*, my, our things ; *omnia*, all things ; *haec, illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense : *doctus*, a learned man ;

cœrum, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sinceri*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fœra* (bestia), wild beast; *hiberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversæ*, adversity; *res secundæ*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Diāna Ephēsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercūles Xēnōphontius*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imius*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.: *prima nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inōplæ, for ad ultimam inōplam, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nemo saltat sobrius, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic. *Hortensium vivum amēvi*, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive. Cic. *Homo nunquam sobrius*, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. *Prior*, *primus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Primus mōrem solvit, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *primum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes vēnēnum lactus hausit, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison.

Sen. *Sēnātus frēquens convēnit*, The senate assembled in great numbers.

Cic. *Roscius erat Rōmæ frēquens*, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *lactus*, *libena*, *invitus*, *tristis*, *sciens*, *insciens*, *prūdens*, *imprūdens*, etc. (2) *Nullus*, *solus*, *tōtus*, *unus*; *prior*, *primus*, *prēprior*, *proximus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of time and place:

Dōmesticus atior, I idle about home. Hor. *Vespertinus pēte tectum*, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, the former of these (two). Nep. *Gallōrum fortissīmi*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

Clārior quam grātior, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīsertus māgis quam sāpiens*, fluent rather than wise. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *præter*, *supra* (417. 2. 8), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxima pars, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium difficillima*, a thing by far the most difficult of all. Cic. *Quam maximæ cōpiæ*, forces as large as possible. Sall. *Quanta maxima vastitas*, the greatest possible devastation. Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissime, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam felicius*, with more bravery than success. Liv.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

Animā quod sanguinem hābet, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego*, qui te confirmo, I who encourage you. Cic. *Vis est in virtūibus*; eas excita, There is strength in virtues, arouse them. Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animal* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūibus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. **AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.**—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. **WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.**—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Pueri mulieresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccatum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3) ; hence *pueri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for *verba*. See 463. 1.

4. **WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.**—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent :

Animal quem (for *quod*) vocamus hominem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thebae, quod (*quae*) caput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) erat confessio, *That* (i. e., the action referred to) *was a confession.* Liv. Flumen Rhenus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive *Rhenus* ; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hominem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. **CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.**—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form ; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs :

Equitatus, qui viderunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Earum rerum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Democritum omittamus ; apud istos ; *let us omit Democritus ; with such* (i. e., as he). Cic.

6. **ANTECEDENT OMITTED.**—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accipit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integritate vixistis, hoc interest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. **CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.**—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod debet, patria delectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought* (lit. *that which it owes*). Cic.

8. **RELATIVE ATTRACTED.**—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated :

Judice quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cūmae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam statuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mālārū, quas āmor cūras hābet, oblivisci (for *mālārū curārū quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejeci, vos tyrannos intrōducitis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic, is, ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quidem*, you indeed, *ille quidem*, he indeed. *Quidem* adds emphasis; *equidem* = *ego quidem*.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *nos*ter for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is, Ille*, and *Ipse*:

Se diligit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mōvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consolor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādent Tulingis ūti cum iis prōficiscantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos, inter vos, inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together*; but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collōquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hōmīnes hōmīnibus ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men*, i. e., to each other. Cic

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

Se diligit, *He loves himself*. Cic. Justitia propter sese colenda est, *Justice should be cultivated for its own sake*. Cic. Annulum suum dedit, *He gave his ring*. Nep.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject :

Sentit animus se vi sua moveri, *The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power*. Cic. A me petivit ut secum essem, *He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be)*. Cic. Pervestigat quid sui cives cogitent, *He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think*. Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Id, Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Deum agnoscis ex ejus operibus, *You recognise a god by (from) his works*. Cic. Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutatuos, *He binds the state not to change anything (that they will)*. Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum* *is* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *secum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. *Suus* = HIS OWN, ETC.—*Suus* in the sense of *his own, fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object :

Justitia suum cuique tribuit, *Justice gives to every man his due (his own)*. Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter :

A Caesare invitator sibi ut sim legatus, *I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant*. Cic.

4. *Suus* SUBSTANTIVELY.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases :

Fuit hoc luctuosum suis, *This was afflicting to his friends*.^{*} Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. *Sui* and *Suus* sometimes refer to an omitted subject :

Deforme est de se praedicare, *To boast of one's self is disgusting*. Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject :

Respondit neminem secum sine sua perniciie contendisse, *He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction*. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *neminem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic. Muta istam mentem, Change that purpose of yours. Cic. Si illos negligis, if you disregard those. Cic.

1. *HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.*—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time :

Non antiquo illo more, sed hoc nostro fuit eruditus, He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way. Cic.

2. *HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.*—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important :

Ignavia, labor : illa, hic ; Indolence, labor : the former, the latter. Cels. Pax, victoria : haec (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est ; Peace, victory : the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods. Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous :

Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *homo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ego*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quidem*. *Scipio non multum ille quidem dicebat, Scipio did not indeed say much. Cic. See 446. 1.*

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case: *hic dolor* = *dolor hujus rei*, grief on account of this; *haec cura* = *cura de hoc*, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives :

Dionysius aufergit : is est in provincia, Dionysius has fled : he is in the province. Cic. Is qui satis habet, he who has enough. Cic. Eadem audire malunt, They prefer to hear the same things. Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive :

Flēbat pater de filii morte, de patris : illius, The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father. Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipsē* with a Conjunction is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too, and that indeed* :

Unam rem explicabo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also*: Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnia, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet*:

Nihil utile, quod non idem honestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—negat idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = *he—who*, such—as, such—that:

Si sumus, qui esse debemus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui*; *idem—ac, atque, quam, quod, ut, cum* with Abl. = the same—who, the same—as:

Idem mores, qui, *The same manners which or as.* Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self*:

Ipse Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custodias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *IPSE* WITH SUBJECT.—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consolor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. *IPSE, VERY.*—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very*:

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just*:

Triginta dies ipse, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own*:

Nostra ipsorum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 8.

5. *Ipse Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus*:

Légatos misit qui ipse vitam peterent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res loquitur ipsa; quae semper valet; *The fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, isto—qui*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quicumque* and *Quicquid*, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of *fieri potest*: *quicumque ratione*, in every way, i. e., in whatever way it is possible.

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together :

Quae nec habēremus nec his utēremur, Which we should neither have nor use. Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *ii qui audiunt* = auditores, hearers.

3. TWO RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Artes quas qui tēnent, arts, whose possessors (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl. :

Quae tua prūdētia est = *qua es prūdētia* = *pro tua prūdētia* = *such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc.* : *Spēro, quae tua prūdētia est, te vālēre, I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals :

Vēsa, quae pulcherrīma vidērat, the most beautiful vessels which he had seen (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. *De servis suis, quem habuit fidēlissimum, misit, He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *ut, nisi, etiam*, and sometimes before *quia, quoniam, dūnam*, etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and* :

Quod si ceciderint, if or but if they should fall. Cic.

7. *Qui dicitur, qui vocatur*, or the corresponding active *quem dicunt, quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call*, etc. :

Vestra quae dicitur vita, mors est, Your so called life (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. *Lex ista quam vocas non est lex, That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively ; *qui*, adjectively :

Quis ego sum, Who am I? Cic. *Quid faciet, What will he do?* Cic. *Qui vir fuit, What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. **QUIS AND QUL**.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively: *quis rex unquam fuit, What king was there ever?* Cic. *Qui sis, considera, Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. **QUID**, *why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (380. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid enim, why then? what indeed (as or dicam)? Quid quod, what of the fact that?*

3. TWO INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Quis quem fraudavit, who defrauded, and whom did he defraud (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. **ATTRACTION**.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun :

Quam (for *quid*) *dicam voluptatem vidētis, You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui, and quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one, any one*:

Est *aliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. *Alia res quaequam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis, qui, and quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si, nisi, ne, and num*. *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *si*, etc., is emphatic.

456. *Quidam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quidam rhëtor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quidam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quidam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Iustitia mirifica quaedam videtur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quidam* with *quidam* and sometimes without it, has the force of a certain, a kind of, as it were:

Quidam alumnus quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me *quisquam* agnovit, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censes ullum animal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nemo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Neminem laesit, *He harmed no one*. Cic. *Nemo postea, no post*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nemo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum animal, *no animal*. Cic. *Nullius aures*, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non*.

Nullus venit, *He did not come*. Cic. *Mortui nulli sunt*, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quivis, Quilibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelibet res, *any thing*. Cic. *Tuorum quisque necessariorum*, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever*, *always*, with *primus* by *very*, *possible*:

Epicurus doctissimus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise*, etc. Cic. *Primo quoque die*, *the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque*—*ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sibi plurimum confidit, ita maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated : *alius—alius*, one—another ; *alii—alii*, some—others ; *alter—alter*, the one—the other ; *altëri—altëri*, the one party—the other :

Alii glôriæ serviunt, alii pëcûniæ, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. Altëri dimicant, altëri timent, One party contends, the other fears. Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis :

Alius alia via civitatem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with *alias* or *aliter* : *Aliter alii vivunt, Some live in one way, others in another. Cic.*

2. After *Alius*, *Aliter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than* :

Non alius essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second* ; *alius*, *another, other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either :

Inimicus, compëtor, cum altëro—cum altëro, an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former. Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties*.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON :

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic. Ego rëges ejëci, vos tÿrannos intrödüctis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3 :

Thëbani accusäti sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject :

Dissidentia futürum quæ impërävisset, from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place. Scil.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dicas*, you (any one) may say; *dicimus*, we (people) say; *dicunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like :

Multitudo abeunt, *The multitude depart*. Liv. *Pars per agros dilapsi*, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

1) Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: *Adde defectionem Siciliæ*, *Add (to this, soldiers,) the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often Sing., and the latter Plur.: *Juventus ruit certantque*, *The youth rush forth and contend*. Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense :

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Alterum*, and the like :

Uterque educunt, *they each lead out*. Caes. *Alter alterum videmus*, *We see each other*. Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum* :

Dux cum principibus capiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken*. Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim*—*Partim* in the sense of *pars*—*pars* :

Bonorum partim necessaria, partim non necessaria sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun :

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, concrematum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, *Not every error should be called folly*. Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *verbs*, *oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *ubi*, etc.: *Nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita est* (not *quaesitum*), *Nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others :

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number :

Lentulus, Scipio perierunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicero vālemus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia, vāletis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Sēnātus pōpulusque intelligit, *The senate and people* (i. e., the state as a unit) *understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, *Time and necessity* (i. e., the crisis) *demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut*, *vel*, *nec*, *nēque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur. :

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iudicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ego nēque tu fecimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive ; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things : (371.6) :

Deus omnia constituit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, *All things were ordained by God*. Cic. Dei providentia mundum administrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei providentia mundus administratur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act, with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lavantur in fluminibus, *They bathe (wash themselves) in the rivers*. Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetorium, *They run to the praetorium (it is run to)*. Cic.

3. DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirabar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (271, 8) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicero valemus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hoc te rogo, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths and customs*:

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortes fortuna adiuvat, *Fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jugurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart*. Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. **PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.**—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdudum*, etc.

Jamdiu ignōro quid āgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing. Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. **PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.**—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant :

Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtāntem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing. Cic.

4. **PRESENT WITH DUM.**—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions :

Dum ea pārant, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked. Liv.

5. **PRESENT FOR FUTURE.**—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions :

Si vincīmus, omnia tūta erunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe. Sall.

II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time :

Stābant nobilissīmi jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths. Liv. *Colles oppidū cingēbant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially.

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events :

Ante oppidū plānties pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain. Caes. *Fulgentes glādios vidēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc. :

Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārum, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style. Nep.

1. **IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.**—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action :

Sedābant tūmultus, They attempted to quell the seditions. Liv.

2. **IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.**—See §72. 1.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time :

Scribam ad te, I will write to you. Cic. Nunquam aberrābimus, We shall never go astray. Cic.

1. FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative :

Cūrābis et scribes, You will take care and write. Cic.

2. LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English :

Nātūram si sēquēmur, nunquam aberrābimus, If we follow nature, we shall never go astray. Cic.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.—With *melius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive :

Mélius pēribimus, We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish. Liv.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses :

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have* :

De gēnere belli dixi, I have spoken of the character of the war. Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action as a simple historical fact :

Miltiādes est accūsātus, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

1. PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present :

Hābuit, non hābet, He had, but has not. Cic. Fuit Ilium, Ilium was. Virg.

2. PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative :

Brūtum non mīnus āmo, paene dixi, quam te, I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you. Cic.

3. PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mēmīnit praetērītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam veni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum*, etc., in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cecidit Ilium, *after (as soon as) Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam profugerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (*posteaquam*): Posteaquam aedificasset classes, *after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cūpias quas pro castris collocaverat, reduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. TENSES.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil habebam quod scriberem: ad tuas omnes epistolas rescripsēram, *I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters (I had replied, i. e., before writing this).* Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—See 471. 3.

3. PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness of action:

Urbem luctu complēverant, *They (had) filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnērō, scribam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnērō, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestitēro, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses :

Si interpretāri pōtuerō, his verbis utitur, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc feci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive :

1. The Indicative of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2) :

Haec conditio non accipienda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the Indicative, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so :

Viceramus, nisi recepisset Antōnium, *We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative :

Quisquis est, is est sapiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultimum, utcumque initum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. In *Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not :

Tardius quam debuērat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, melius, utilius, longum, difficile*, and the like: Longum est persēqui utilitātes, *It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vĕra invĕnire possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblitus es quid dixĕrim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thĕmistocles, quum Graeciam libĕrasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nitĕtur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nĕmo ĕrit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesĭĕras nonne pĕtĕrem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Video quid āgas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vidi quid agas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Videbo quid agas,	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vidĕro quid agas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Video quid āgeris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vidi quid egeris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Videbo quid egeris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vidĕro quid egeris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action :

Vidēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid āgeres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid āgeres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action :

Vidēbam quid āgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid ēgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid ēgisses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule :

Video quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (470), (1) by the Present¹ or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *futūrum sit ut*,² with the regular Present, and *futūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices :

Incertum est quam longa vīta futūra sit, *It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quo missuri classem forent, *It was uncertain whether they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *futūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *futūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *futūrus sim* and *futūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle :

Non dubito quin confecta jam res futūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense :

1. As Principal tense according to its Form :

Ubi orant, ut sibi parcat, *The Ubi implore him to spare them.* Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense :

Persuadet Castico ut regnum occiparet, *He persuaded Casticus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1) ; accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense :

¹ The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

² *Futūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *futūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mēmōrāre possem quibus in locis hostes fūdērit, *I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spēro fore¹ ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāverat fore ut ad se dēficērent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*:

Quōniam quae subsidia hābēres expōsui,² nunc dicam, *Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect*:

Epāminondas fide sic ūsus est, ut possit iūdicāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristides abstinētia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit iūdicāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exitus fuit orationis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dāri possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

¹ Here *fore* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāverat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēficērent*.

² *Expōsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak, &c.*

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action : (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows :

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible* :

Forſitan quaerātis, Perhaps you may inquire. Cic. Hoc nēmo dixērit, *No one would say this.* Cic. Huic cēdāmus, *hujus conditiones audiāmus, Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dūbītet (= nēmo dūbītat), *Who would doubt, or who doubts (= no one doubts)?* Cic. Quid faciērem, *What was I to do, or what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,¹ to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam spūlis cāreat sēnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts*. Cic. Quōniam non possent, *since they would not be able*. Caes. Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might demand*. Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ubi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. **USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.**—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. **How rendered.**—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, etc., or by *shall* or *will*.

3. **INCLINATION.**—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think*, or *I am inclined to think*. Liv.

4. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dixēres*, you would have said; *crēdēres*, *pūtāres*, you would have thought; *vidēres*, *cernēres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdēres* victos, rēdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp*. Liv.

5. **SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.**—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ubi*, whenever, *quōtīes*, as often as, *quicūque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētīlis ūbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fétial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever* (i. e., every time) *he had said this*. Liv.

6. **PRESENT AND PERFECT.**—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plātōnem laudāveris, *You would praise Plato*. Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. **CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.**—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

¹ These are also variously called *Deliberatives*, *Doubting*, or *Rhetorical Questions*.

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* :

Valeant cives, *May the citizens be well*. Cic. Amemus patriam, *Let us love our country*. Cic. Robore utare, *Use your strength*. Cic. Scribere ne pigrescere, *Do not neglect to write*. Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a WISH, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a COMMAND mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. WITH UTINAM.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut, ei, o si* :

Utinam cōnēta efficere possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors*. Cic.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled :

Sint beati, *May they be happy*. Cic. Ne transieris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro*. Liv. Utinam possem, utinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able*. Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been* :

Hec dicēret, *He should have said this*. Cic. Mortem oppētīlesce, *You should have met death*. Cic.

3. NEGATIVE NE.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non* : Ne audeant, *Let them not dare*. Cic. Non recedāmus, *Let us not recede*. Cic.

4. IN ASSEVERATIONS.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations :

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think*. Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write*. Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic* : Sollicitat, ita vivam, *As I live, it troubles me*. Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses :

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam utinam pervēniat, *old age, to which may you attain*. Cic.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quōmīnus* :

PURPOSE.—*Enītūtur ut vincat*, *He strives that he may conquer*. Cic.
Pānit ne peccātur, *He punishes that crime may not be committed*. Sen.

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus*, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians*. Nep.

II. With *qui* = *ut is*, *ut ego*, *tu*, etc. :

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) cōsūlērēt Apollīnem*, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should)*. Nep.

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his tītar*, *I am not such an one as to use these things*. Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *āgo*, rarely with *est* a circumlocution for the Indicative : *fācio ut dicam* = *dicō* ; *fācio ut scribam* = *scribo* : *Invitus fācio ut rēcōrd*, *I unwillingly recall*. Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. *UT* AND *NE*.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose ; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve*, *neve*, rarely *nēque*. *Nēve*, *neve*, = *aut ne* or *et ne* : *Lēgem tūlt nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur*, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished*. Nep.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that*, *in order that*, *that not*, *in order that not*, *lest*, etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*ideo*, *idcirco*, etc.—may or may not precede :

Lēgem idcirco servi sūmus, ut libēri esse possīmus, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free*. Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a Purpose which partakes more or less of the character of a Direct Object, sometimes of a Subject, Predicate or Appositive—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT.—striving for a purpose ; attaining a purpose :

nitor, *contendo*, *stūdeo*,—*cūro*, *id āgo*, *ōpōram do*, etc., *fācio*, *efficio*, *impetro*, *consēquor*, etc. :

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer*. Cic. Cūrāvi ut bene vivērem, *I took care to lead a good life*. Sen. Effecit ut impērator mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort :

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mōveo,—ōro, rōgo,—impēro, praecipio, etc. :

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read*. Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni simus, *We are influenced to be good*. Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him*. Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2; 558. VI.

3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION : hence *decision, decree*, etc. :

opto, postūlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, constitūto, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mōlo :

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this*. Cic. Sēnātus censuērāt, ūti Aeduos dēfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui*. Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. FEAR, DANGER :

mētuo, timeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc. :

Timeo, ut sustineas, *I fear you will not endure them*. Cic. Vēreor ne lābōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor*. Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able*. Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise*. Cic.

493. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, is sometimes used for *ne* :

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dimittērent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates*. Nep. Ut plūra non dicam, *not to say more*, i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mōlo*, *fūcio*, and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *cave* :

Tu vōlim sis, *I desire that you may be*. Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have*. Cic. Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent opēram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it*. Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted :

Fecit pācem his conditionibus, ne qui afficērentur exsilio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile*. Nep. Ut ita dicam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak*.

4. *Nedum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less*, *not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive :

Vix in tectis frigus vitetur, nedum in mari sit facile, The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea. Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence* :

Ita vixit ut Atheniensibus esset carissimus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians. Nep. Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam, I so praise as not to fear. Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, etc, tam, adeo, tantopere, talis, tantus, ejusmodi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate, or Appositive*: Thus

1. Clauses as **OBJECT AND RESULT** occur with *facio, efficio*, of the action of irrational forces:

Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, The sun causes all things to bloom, i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as **SUBJECT AND RESULT** occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant, etc.*:

accidit, contingit, evenit, fit, restat, sequitur, adest, etc.

Fit ut quisque delectetur, The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted. Cic. Sequitur ut falsum sit, It follows that it is false. Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum* :

Mos est ut nolit, It is their custom not to be willing (that they are unwilling). Cic. Proximum est, ut doceam, The next point is, that I show. Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *credendum est, verisimile est*, is it to be credited, is it probable?

Tu ut unquam te corrigas, that you should ever reform? i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as **APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, OR PREDICATE AND RESULT**, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns :

Habet hoc virtus ut delectet, Virtue has this advantage, that it delights. Cic. Est hoc vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit, There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory. Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *necesse est*:

Te oportet virtus trahat, It is necessary that virtue should attract you.

Cic. Causam habeat necesse est, It is necessary that it should have a cause. Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut*:

Liberalius quam ut posset, too freely to be able (more freely than so as to be able). *Nep. Imponebat amplius quam ferre possent, He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum abest.*—After *tantum abest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs:

Philosophia, tantum abest, ut laudetur ut etiam vituperetur, So far is it from the truth (so much is wanting), that philosophy is praised that it is even censured. Cic.

497. Quo.—*Quo*, by which, that, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives:

Medico dare quo sit studiosior, to give to the physician, that (by this means) *he may be more attentive. Cic.*

For non quo of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. Quin.—*Quin* (*qui* and *ne*), by which not, that not, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non*:

Retineri non poterant, quin tela conicerent, They could not be restrained from hurling (that they might not) *their weapons. Caes. Nihil est tam difficile quin (ut non) investigari possit, Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated. Ter.*

After verbs of *hindering*, *opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo*, *Nullus*, *Nihil*, *Quis*?

Adest nemo, quin videat, There is no one present who does not see. Cic. Quis est quin cernat, Who is there who does not perceive? Cic.

Is or id is sometimes expressed after *quin*:

Nihil est quin id intereat, There is nothing which does not perish. Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that*, *but that*, *without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt*, *uncertainty*, *omission*, and the like:

Non est dubium quin beneficium sit, There is no doubt that it is a benefit. Sen. Nullum intermisi diem quin aliquid darem, I allowed no day to

pass, without giving something. Cic. *Făcere non possum quin littēras mittam, I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dubito, non dubium est—non multum abest, paulum abest, nihil abest, quid abest?—non, viz, aegre abstineo; mihi non tempéro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcere non possum, fieri non potest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dubitat pătēre Eurōpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See §20. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but*: Quin agite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. QUOMINUS.—Quōmīnus (quo and mīnus), *that thus the less, that not*, is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret sapiētem mors quōmīnus reipublicae consūlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rēcūsāvit, quomīnus poenam sūbiret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stētit quōmīnus dimicārētur, *It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: dēterreo, impēdio, prōhibeo,—obsto, obisto, officio,—rēcuso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, or *quōmīnus*.

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, etc.:

PURPOSE.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consūlērēt Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should, or that they should).* Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermōpylas occūpārēt, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—Non is sum qui (= *ut ego*) his ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innōcentia est affectio tālis ānīmī, quae (= *ut ea*) nō ceat nēmīni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to injure no one.* Cic.

1. **RELATIVE PARTICLES.**—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles*; *ubi*, *unda*, etc.:

Dōmum ubi hābitāret, lēgit, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it (where he might dwell).* Cic.

2. PURPOSE AND RESULT.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, *is*, *quomōdō*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, *is*, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the fact:

Mihi causa tālis oblata est, in qua oratio deesse nemini pōtest, *Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration.* Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

Nunc dicis aliquid (*quomōdō*, or *tāle*) quod ad rem pertinēat, *Now you state something which belongs to the subject* (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. Sunt qui pūtent, *there are some who think.* Cic. Nemo est qui non cūpiat, *there is no one who does not desire*, i. e., such as not to desire. Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non habeo*, *nihil habeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, *There is reason why you should rejoice*, or so that you may. Plaut. Non est quod crēdas, *There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. Nihil habeo, quod incūsem sēnectūtem, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dicere, *There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak.* Cic. Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, *There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos jūvat, *there are some whom it delights.* Hor.

3. RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Solus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Sāpientia est una, quae moestitiā pellat, *Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness* (such as to dispel). Cic. Sōli centum erant qui creāri possent, *There were only one hundred who could be appointed* (such that they could be). Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Ap- tus* take the subjunctive:

Fābulae dignae sunt, quae lēgantur, *The fables are worthy to be read* (that they should be read). Cic. Rufum Caesar idōneum iudicāverat quem mittēret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send* (whom he might send). Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive:

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimāri possint, The losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

Si nēgem, mentiar, If I should deny it, I should speak falsely. Cic.
Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With *dum, mōdo, dummodo*:

Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, Mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vřlut, vřlut si*:

Crūdēlītātē, vřlut si ādēssēt, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present. Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, nīsi, nī, sin, qui = si is, si quis*:

Dies deficiat, si vēlim nūmērāre, The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount. Cic. Imprōbe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic. Si vēlūisset, dimicasset, If he had wished, he would have fought. Nep.

1. *SI OMITTED*.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

Nēgat quis, nēgo, Does any one deny, I deny. Ter. Rōges me, nihil respondeam, Should you ask me, I should make no reply. Cic. See also Imperative, 535. 2.

2. *CONDITION SUPPLIED*.—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles*: *Non pōtestis, vřluptātē omnia dirīgētes (si dirīgētis), rētinēre virtūtē, You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure. Cic.*

2) By *Oblique Cases*: *Nēmo sine spe (nīsi spem hāberet) se offerret ad mortē, No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death. Cic.*

3. **IRONY.**—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi* *vêro*, *nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quâsi*, *quâsi vêro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nisi forte insânit, unless perhaps he is insane. Cic. *Quâsi vêro nêcesse sit, as if indeed it were necessary.* Caes.

4. **ITA—SI, ETC.**—*Ita—si*, so—if, means only—if *Si quidem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. **ET OMITTED.**—See 587. I. 6.

504. FORCE OF TENSES.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. **PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.**—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible:

Tu si hic sis, âlter sentias, If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently. Ter.

2. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed:

Num Optimium, si tum esses, tēmērârium civem putâres? Would you think Optimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. DUM, MÔDO, DUMMÔDO.—*Dum*, *môdo*, and *dummôdo*, in conditions, have the force of—if only, provided that, or with *ne*, if only not, provided that not:

Dum res mâneant, verba fingant, Let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. *Môdo permâneat industria, if only industry remains.* Cic. *Dummôdo repellant pericûlum, provided he may avert danger.* Cic. *Môdo ne laudarent, if only they did not praise.* Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative:

Dum lēges vigēbant, while the laws were in force. Cic.

503. AC SI, UT SI, QUÂSI, ETC.—*Ac si*, *ut si*, *quam si*, *quâsi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam si*, *vêlut*, *vêlut si*, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Misêrior es, quam si oculos non hâbêres, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes. Cic. *Crûdeltâtē, vêlut si adesset, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present.* Caes. *Ut si in suam rem âliēna convertant, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. *Tanquam audiant, as if they may hear.* Sen.

Cen and *Sicûti* are sometimes used in the same way:

Cen bella fôrēt, as if there were wars. Virg. *Sicûti audiri possent, as if they could be heard.* Sall.

507. SI, NISI, NI, SIN, QUL.—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si*, *nisi*, *ni*, *sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. First Form.—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, If this is a state, I am a citizen. Cic. Si non licēbat, non nēcesse erat, If it was not lawful, it was not necessary. Cic. Dūlōrem si non pūtēro frangēre, occultābo, If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it. Cic. Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dōmi, Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home. Cic.

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *mōdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*. The *time* may be either *present*, *past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—The conclusion may take the form of a command:
Si peccāvi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me. Cic.

3. **SI NON, NISI.**—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. Second Form.—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as *possible*:

Haec si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request? Cic. Imprōbe fēcēris, nisi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

1. When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mētuit ne, si iret, retrāhērētur, He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back. Liv.

510. Third Form.—Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Sāpientia non expētērētur, si nihil effīcēret, Wisdom would not be sought (as it is), if it accomplished nothing. Cic. *Si optima tēnere possēmus, haud sāne consilio ōgērēmus, If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. *Si vōluisset, dimicasset, If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. *Nunquam ābisset, nisi sibi viam mūnīvisset, He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty*, *Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fūtūrum fuit, si plebs āgītāri coepta esset, What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated? Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inōpia coactus ut, nisi timuisset, Galliam rēpētīturus fuērit, He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul. Liv.

Here *rēpētīturus fuērit* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut*; but it is in the *Perfect*, because, if it were not dependent, the *Perfect Indicative* would have been used.

511. MIXED FORMS.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain *Mixed Forms*.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Pēream, si pōtērunt, May I perish (subj. of desire, 487), if they shall be able. Cic. *Quid timeam, si beātus fūtūrus sum, Why should I fear (486. II.), if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies defīciet, si vēlim causam dēfendēre, The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause. Cic. *Vicērāmus nisi rēcēpisset Antōnium, We had conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if, although* :

Si hoc placeat, tamen vólunt, Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish. Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo, Possum*, and the like :

Quem, si ulla in te pietas esset, cōlère dēbēbas, Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you. Cic. *Dēlērī exercitus pōtuit, si persēcutī victōres essent, The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Pæne* or *Prōpe* :

Rēlictūri agros ērant, nīsi littēras mīsisset, They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter. Cic. *Pons iter pæne hostībūs dēdit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive :

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. *Hæc qui videat, cōgātur, If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although* :

Quamquam intellīgunt, though they understand. Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although):

Licet irrideat, plus tamen ratio valebit, Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more. Cic. *Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum ego*, etc., though he:

Absolvite Verrem, qui (quum is) se fiteatur pecunias cepisse, Acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money. Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tamen*, *etiam*:

Quod sentiunt, etsi optimum sit, tamen non audent dicere, They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent. Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes:

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative:

Quamquam intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, Though they understand, they never speak. Cic.

1. The Subjunctive may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The Subjunctive, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: *Quamquam ne id quidem suspicionem habuerit, Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *et* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet*: *Quamquam quid loquor, And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although);—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc., take the Subjunctive:

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, You would not be able, however much (although) you excel. Cic. *Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est, Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. *UT* AND *NE*.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine*: thus, *ut desint vires* (515. I.) = *fac* or *sine ut desint vires*, make or grant that strength fails. See 489.

The Concessive Particle is sometimes omitted:

Sed habeat, tamen, But grant that it has it, yet. Cic.

UT—SIC OR *ITA*, as—so, though—yet, does not require the subjunctive.

2. **QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.**—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. **MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.**—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitāte rēgia, quamvis cārēbat nōmine, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. **RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.**—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui = licet (quum) is, licet ego, tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*: *etsi, etiamsi, tāmetsi* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil hābeat in se glōria, tāmēn virtutē sequitur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. Etiamsi mors oppetenda esset, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With *quum* (cum), since; *qui = quum is*, etc.:

Quum vita mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae quum ita sint, perge, *Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. O vis vērītātis, quae (*quum ea*) se dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With *quod, quia, quōniam, quando*, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrātes accūsātus est, quod corrupēret iuēntutē, *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

Causal Clauses with *Quum* and *Qui*.

518. **QUUM.**—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. CAUSE OR CONCESSION:

Quum sint in nobis rātio, prādentia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. Phōcion fuit pauper, quum divitiissimū esse posset, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION :

Quum dimicāret, occisus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiebam frēquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dimicāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occisus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period :

Id saeculum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsiderēs, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc.: Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative :

Quum quiescunt, prōbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pēruit, quum nēcēse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason :

O fortunāte ādōlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ego, quum tu, quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used :

Hābeo sēnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis āviditatem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum, quippe, ut, utpōtē* :

Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiātur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cōlōvi essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia, quōniam* :

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quōniam intelligi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.*

Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that (because) they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—Dico and puto are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gesturos dicerent = quod bellum gesturi essent, ut dicerent, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—Non quo, non quod, non quin, rarely non quia, also quam quod, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo habërem quod scriberem, *not because (that) I had anything to write.* Cic. Non quod dolëant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nequiverat quam quod ignoraret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With dum, donec, quoad, until:

Exspectas dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea continëbis quoad te videam, *You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With antequam, priusquam, before, before that:

Antequam de re publica dicam, exponam consilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incipias, *before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*: dum dicat is nearly equivalent to ut dicat, which is also often used after exspecto. Antequam dicam is nearly equivalent to ut postea dicam: I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.

2. WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might require*. Liv.

522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOAD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact*:

Dum lēges vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force*. Cic. Quoad rēnuntiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced*. Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired or proposed*:

Differant, dum dēfervescent ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools*, i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. DONEC, in TACITUS, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat viōlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean*. Tac.

2. DONEC, in LIVY, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause*:

Nihil trēpidābant dōnec ponte āgrentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge*. Liv.

523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light*. Cic. Antēquam in Siciliā vēni, *before I came into Sicily*. Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In any *Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose or cause* is involved:

Priusquam incīpiās, consulto ōpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation*, i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas minātur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises*, i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antēquam urbem cāpērent, *before they took the city*. Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audire pōtuisent, in Mācēdōniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia*. Cic.

3. *Pridie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam*.

1) INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—With *antēquam* and *prīusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommōdis dico, paucā dicēda, Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned. Cic. *Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, expōnam consiliū, Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.—The two parts of which *antēquam*, *prīusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prīus*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracūsae capērentur, a few days before Syracuse was taken. Liv. See *Imesia*, 704. IV. 3.

VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions: *Subjunctum*

Quid dies fērat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic. *Quaeritur, cur doctissimī hōmīnes dissentiant, It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. *Quasiēras, nonne pūtārem, you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. *Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERROGATIVES.—Indirect or Dependent questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *si*, *sive*, *seu*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.—Indirect questions are used substantively, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, I do not know (him), who he was. Ter.

3. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—An indirect question may be readily changed to a direct or independent question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fēret, What will a day bring forth?* So in the second: *Cur doctissimī hōmīnes dissentiunt, Why do the most learned men disagree?*

4. SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.—After *nescio quis*, I know not who = *quidam*, some one; *nescio quōmodo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānīmus praesāgit, The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praesāgiat, understood). Ter. *Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, This profited, it is wonderful how much, i. e., it wonderfully profited.* Liv.

5. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.**—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses.*—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*

Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*

Cic. Quæramus tibi mælficium est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *tibi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *tibi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) *From Direct Questions and Exclamations :*

Quid ægendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.
Vide! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. **INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence*:

Si memörare vëlim, quam fidëli ânimo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. **QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.** See 530. II. 2.

526. **SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.**—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation:

Rögitat qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epäminondas quæsit, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dübito num dëbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions:

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quæritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expëtatur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare:

Quæritur, nätura an doctrina possit effici virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *neque*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*: *Sapientia beatorum efficit neque, quaestio est, Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question.* Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dubito an, nescio an, haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dubium est an, incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dubito an Thrasýbulum primum omnium ponam, I doubt whether I should not place Thrasýbulus first of all, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Simónides an quis alius, Simónides or some other one. Cic.

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vereor, ne, dum minuere velim laborem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic. *Tempus est hujusmodi, ut, ubi quisque sit, ibi esse minime velit, The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui velit, The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. APPLICATION.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Milties misit, ut eos qui fugerant perséquerentur, He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. *Tanta vis prohibitis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vidimus, diligamus, Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

Fuere qui, dum dubitat Scaevinus, hortarentur Pisónem, There were those who exhorted Píao, while Scaevinus hesitated. Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum* :

Nec bōnitas esse pōtest, si non per se expōtātur, *Nor can goodness exist (= it is not possible that), if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Obliqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

Oratio Obliqua.

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua* :

Plātōnem fērint in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdērate, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plātōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse ; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be : *Plato in Itāliam vēnit*.

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse :

Rex “duumvīros” inquit “sēcundum lēgem fācio,” *The king said, “I appoint duumvirs according to law.”* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua* :

Ad postūlātā Caesāris respondit, cur vēnīret (*direct* : cur vēnis ?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct* : cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annūlum quem hābēret (*direct* : hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the *Oratio Obliqua* is here inserted.

530. MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :

Dicēbat ānimos esse divinos (direct: *ānīmi sunt divīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. *Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērio* (*Plāto Tārentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. *Cāto mirāri se* (*miror*) *āiebat*, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. VERB OMITTED.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression ; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiādem impĕrātōrem sūmĕrent ; *incepta prospĕra fūtūra*, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he ? for *non pōtest*, he can not ; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base ? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnĕre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be : *Num mēmōriam dēpōnĕre possim ?*

3. IMPERATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE. See 551. II. 1.

531. MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

Orābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret quod prēmĕrentur (direct: *nōbis auxilium fer, quod prēmimur*), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Obliqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

Ad eum dēfertur, esse civem Rōmānum qui quĕrĕrĕtur : *quem (= eum) asservātum esse*, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons : *Te suspĕcor iisdem, quibus me ipsum, commōvĕri*, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions :

Dicit, se moenibus inclūsos tēnere eos ; quia per agros vāgārī, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Rēfērunt silvā esse, quae appellātur Bācēnis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

532. TENSES.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obsides sibi dentur, sese pacem esse facturum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitive in *rus* (or *dus*) *esse* or *fuisse* :

Censes Pompium laetaturum fuisse, si sciret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known ?* Cic. Clāmītabat, si ille adesset, venturos esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. In Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), the Condition generally conforms to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480), but the Conclusion changes the Subjunctive to the Future Infinitive :

Respondit, si Aeduis satisfāciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum, *He replied that if they would satisfy the Aeduians, he would make peace with them.* Caes. Legatos mittit, si ita fecisset, amicitiam futuram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense:

Agunt ut dimicent; Ibi impĕrium fōre, unde victōria fuĕrit, *They arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārbat regnātūrum, qui vicisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect*:

Glōriātus est annūlum se sua mānu confēcisse (*direct*: annūlum ego mea mānu confēcī), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ego* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *eius*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then*; *nunc* to *tum*; *hic* to *illuc*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the **SPEAKER** whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ego*, *meus*, *noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu*, *tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *eui*, *eius*, *ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic*, *is*, *ille*.

2) That references to the **REPORTER**, or Author, are made by *ego*, *meus*, etc.

3) That references to the **PERSON ADDRESSED** by the reporter are made by *tu*, *tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse Iniquos qui se interpellārēmus (*direct*: vos estis Iniqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the **Reporter**, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the **Speaker**, Ariovistus. In the second example under 523, *is* refers to the **Person Addressed**.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses:

I. The **PRESENT** has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative:

Iustitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Cātīlīna, *Go, Catiline.* Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let* :

II consules appellator, *They shall be called consuls, or let them be called consuls.* Cic. Quod dixero, facitote, *You shall do what I say (shall have said).* Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future :

Ubi sciem videris, tum ordines dissipa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks.* Liv.

II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties :

Iustitiam cole, *Practise justice.* Cic. Tu ne cede malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common :

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive :

Cura ut venias, See that you come. Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cave ne, cave*, with the Subjunctive :

Cave facias, Beware of doing it, or see that you do not do it. Cic.

3) *Noli, nolite*, with the Infinitive :

Noli imitari, do not imitate. Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause :

Læcesse; jam videris furentem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied :

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487) :

Sint beati, *Let them be happy.* Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare.* Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

Quod optimum vidēbitur, facies, *You will do (for Imper. do) what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

Rem penditōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pētito; dābitur, *Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

Consūles nēmīni pārento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sālūs pōpūli sup̄rēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

Tu ne cēde mālīs, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēp̄lito, *nēve* ur̄ito, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive :

Nolite pūtāre (*for ne pūtāte*), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

- I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.
- II. The Subject of the Infinitive.
- III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.
- IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. PECULIARITIES.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The PRESENT INFINITIVE represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Cúpio me esse clémentem, *I desire to be mild*. Cic. Máluit se diligí quam mētui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared*. Nep.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time :

Cras argentum dare dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow*. Ter.

3. PRESENT WITH DEBEO, POSSUM, ETC.—After the past tenses of *debeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect ; sometimes also after *mementi*, and the like :

Debuit officiosior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive*. Cic. Id pótuit facere, *He might have done this*. Cic.

542. The PERFECT INFINITIVE represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Plátōnem férunt in Itáliam vénisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Consciús mihi éram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me*. Cic.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. PERFECT FOR PRESENT.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose :

Tétigisse tímunt póstam, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the poet*. Hor.

3. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the result of the action : *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the completeness of the action : *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The FUTURE INFINITIVE represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Brútum visum íri a me púto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic. Oráculum dátum érat víctríces Athénas fóre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious*. Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *futūrum esse ut*, or *fore ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spāro fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope this will fall to our lot (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). *Cic. Non spēxērāt Hannibal, fore ut ad se dēficerent, Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him. Liv. See 556. II. 1.*

1. CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.—*Futūrum esse ut*, or *fore ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. *FORE UT* WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Sometimes *fore ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *fore* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dico me satis adeptum fore, I say that I shall have obtained enough. Cic.

3. *FUTURUM FUISSE UT* WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Futūrum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nisi nuntii essent allati, existimabant futūrum fuisse, ut oppidum emitteretur, They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought. Caes. See 533. 2.

II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentimus cālere ignem, We perceive that fire is hot. Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpēro, I find that Plato came to Tarentum. Cic.

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjicere, The enemy hurled their javelins. Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coeperunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna negotia vult agere, They wish to accomplish great undertakings. Cic. Peccare licet nemini, It is not lawful for one to sin. Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general :

Diligī jūcundum est, It is pleasant to be loved. Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5):

Audīvi sōlītum Fabricium, I have heard that Fabricius was wont. Cic.
Spērāmus nōbis prōfūtūros, We hope to benefit you. Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3):

Ego me Phīdīam esse malle, I should prefer to be Phidias. Cic. *Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind. Cic.* *Jūgurtha omnibus cārus esse (historical infinitive), Jugurtha was dear to all. Sall.*

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative:

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Nōlo esse laudātor, I am unwilling to be an eulogist. Cic. *Beātus esse sine virtūte nemo pōtest, No one can be happy without virtue. Cic.*

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending*, and the like—*dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālō, nōlo, incipio, pergo, dēsīno*, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming*, and the like—*dicor, trādor, fēror—crēdor, existimor, pūtor—rēpōrior—videor*, etc.:

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, Who ought to have been more learned? Cic. *Pārens dici pōtest, He can be called a parent. Cic.* *Stoīcus esse vōluit, He wished to be a Stoic. Cic.* *Dēsīnant esse tīmīdi, Let them cease to be timid. Cic.* *Inventor esse dīcitur, He is said to be the inventor. Cic.* *Prūdēns esse pūtābātur, He was thought to be prudent. Cic.*

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted: *Pollīcītus esse dīcitur, He is said to have promised. Cic.*

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Patriōcio tribūno plēbis fīeri nō licēbat, It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people. Cic. *Mīhi negligēti esse nō licuit, It was not permitted me to be negligent. Cic.*

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *necesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections :

Illis timidis licet esse, nobis necesse est fortibus viris esse, It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men. Liv. But,

2. Even with *licet* the attraction does not always take place :

Ei consulem fieri licet, It is lawful for him to be made consul. Caes.

IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

- I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.
- II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.
- III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III. :

WITH SUBJECT.—*Faciūsus est vinciri civem Rōmānum, That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. *Certum est liberos amari, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. *Lēgem brevem esse oportet, It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—*Ars est difficilis rem publicam regere, To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. *Cārum esse jucundum est, It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. *Haec scire juvat, To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. *Peccare licet nemini, To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = *tempestivum* is thus used with the Infinitive :

Tempus est dicere, It is time to speak. Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive :

Intelligi necesse est esse deos, It must be understood that there are gods. Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *necesse est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it :

Quibusdam hoc displicet philosophari, This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons. Cic. *Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis, To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

Aristides justissimus fuisse trāditur (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor, jubeor, vëtor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dicor, trādor, feror, perhibeor, puto, existimor*, etc., also with *coeptus sum* and *destitus sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of *saying, showing, perceiving, finding*, and the like.

Solem e mundo tollere videntur, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. *Plātōnem audivisse dicitur*, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. *Dii beāti esse intelliguntur*, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy, think*: *mihi videor* or *videor*, *I fancy*; *ut videmur*, *as we fancy.*

II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dicunt esse sapiētem, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. *Haec vitare cupimus*, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Mānere dēcrēvit*, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Dēclārandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus calere ignem*, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narrāvit te sollicitum esse*, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scriptērunt Thēmistōclem in Asiam transisse*, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio, video, sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cōgito, puto, existimo, credo, p̄tero*,—*intelligo, scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dicō, narro, nuntio, dōceo, ostendo, prōmitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fama fert*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

Nullam mihi rēlitam esse grātam, tu es testis, You are a witness (can testify) that no grateful return has been made to me. Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

Cātōnem vīdi in bibliōthēca sēdentem, I saw Cato sitting in the library. Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam, idem—qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

Plātōnem fērunt idem sensisse, quod Pythāgōram, They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras. Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

Num pūtātis, dixisse Antōnium minēcius quam factūm fuisse, Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted? Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

Audeo dicere ipsos pōtius cultōres agrōrum fore quam ut cōll prohibeant, I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled. Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing and Desiring*:

Te tua frui virtūte cūpimus, We desire that you should enjoy your virtue. Cic. Pontem iubet rescindi, He orders the bridge to be broken down (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lex eum necāri vētuit, The law forbade that he should be put to death. Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cūpio, vōlo, nōlo, mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pātior, sīno*, to permit; *impēro, jūbeo*, to command; *prohibeo, vīto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) *Opto*. See 492. 3.

2) *Vōlo, mālo, nōlo, impēro*, and *jūbeo* admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Vōlo ut respondeas, I wish you would reply. Cic. Mālo te hostis mētust, I prefer that the enemy should fear you. Cic.

3) *Concedo, permitto*, rarely *pātior* and *sīno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:
Concedo ut haec apta sint, I admit that these things are suitable. Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion or Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suadere, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Miramur, te laetari, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, doleo, miror, quoror*, and the like; also *aegro fero, graviter fero*, etc.

552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincere scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Creduli esse coeperunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitare cupimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Solent cogitare, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nemo mortem effugere potest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying to *dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise*, etc., also to *be able, be accustomed, be wont*, etc.

2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.—With a few verbs—*doceo, cogo, asseficio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te sapere docet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nationes parere assuefecit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graeco loqui docendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est paratus (*vult*) audire, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic.

Pelides cedere nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avidi committere pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum interest inter dare et accipere, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exitus fuit orationis: albi nullam cum his amicitiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivere est cogitare, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *albi—amicitiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cogitare* is in the same construction after *est*.

II. As Appositive ; see 363 :

Oraculum datum erat victrices Athēnas fore, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mirari non me accipere tuas litteras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—In the examples, the clause *victrices Athēnas fore* is in apposition with *oraculum*, and the clause *non me accipere tuas litteras*, in apposition with *illud*.

III. In Exclamations ; see 381 :

Te sic vexari, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto desistere victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *doleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *credendum est* or *credibile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve* (*doleo*) *that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed* (*credendum est*) *that I vanquished*, etc.

3. IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose :

Pecus agit altos visere montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non populare penates venimus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms :

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character :

Queritur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid agendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Anticelläre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).
Cic. Magna nēgōtia vōluit āgēre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.*
Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Volo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicāret* is at once subject and result: It was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bēnēficiū est quod nēcesse est mōri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agamemnonem aemulāri pūtas, fallēris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod* :

Me poenitet vixisse, I regret that I have lived. Cic. *Quod te offendi me poenitet, I regret that (or because) I have offended you.* Cic.

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Mos est, mōris est, consuetudo est, consuetudinis est, It is a custom,* etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive :

Mos est hominum ut nolint, It is a custom of men that they are not willing. Cic.

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Rēliquum est, proximum est, extremum est—vērū est, vērissimū est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mirum est, optimum est,* etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive :

Rēliquum est ut certemus, it remains that we contend. Cic. *Vērū est ut bonos diligant, It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to happen—*accidit, contingit, evenit, fit—ut, ut non,* with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2) :

Thrasýbulō contigit, ut patriam vindicāret, It was the good fortune of Thrasýbulus (happened to him) to deliver his country. Nep.

1. Here belong *accidit ut, est ut, futurum esse ut, or fore ut.* See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant,* and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used :

Rēlinquatur, ut quiescāmus, It remains that we should submit. Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a command :

Dōlābellae dixit, ut ad me scribēret ut in Itāliam venīrem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānere dēcrevit, He determined to remain. Nep. *Stātuerunt, ut libertatem dēfendērent, They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constituerat, ut tribūnus quērērētur, He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint. Sall. *Sēnātus dēcrevit, dārent opēram consules, The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Stātuo, *dēcerno*, etc., when they mean to *think*, *deem*, *suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the infinitive:

Landem sapiētiāe stātuo esse maximā, I deem it to be the highest prize of wisdom. Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo*, *nitor*, *stūdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, He proceeds to storm the city. Caes. *Tentabo de hoc dicere, I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—*Fācio*, *efficio*, *perficio*—*ādīpiscor*, *impetro*—*assēquor*, *consēquor*, and sometimes *fēro*, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—*Fācio* in the sense of *assume*, *suppose*, takes the Infinitive; *efficio* in the sense of *prove*, *show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānere post mortem, Assume that souls do not survive after death. Cic. *Vult efficere ānimos esse mortāles, He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you. Cic. *Dōlēbam quod sōcium āmisēram, I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hōmīnes mīseros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postūlant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. **EXAMPLES.**—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: oro, rōgo, pēto, pōro, obsecro—flagito, postūlo, praeclpio—hortor, mōneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incito, mōveo, commōveo.

2. **USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.**—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mōneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. **INFINITIVE.**—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mōneo*, and *postūlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postūlat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vivendi cūpīdītāte incensi sūmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtilis scribendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad āgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In āgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. **ACCUSATIVE.**—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. **GERUND AND INFINITIVE.**—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vōcandi sēnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fōrendo laudem mērēbēris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae = *urbem delendi*, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. *Nūma sacerdotibus creandis animum adjecit*, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests*. Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inita sunt consilia urbem delendi*, in which *delendi* is governed by *consilia*, and *urbem* by *delendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consilia*.

2) *Delendi*, the gerund, is changed into *delendas*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF *UTOR*, *FRUOR*, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtor*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad munus fungendum, *for discharging the duty*. Cic. *Spes potiundorum castrorum*, *the hope of getting possession of the camp*. Caes.

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nāque habent propriam percipiendi notam, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—*Ars vivendi*, *the art of living*. Cic. *Stūdiōsus erat audiendi*, *He was desirous of hearing*. Nep. *Jus vocandi senatum*, *the right of summoning the senate*. Liv. *Cūpidus te audiendi*, *desirous of hearing you*. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Lībido ejus videndi*, *the desire of seeing him*. Cic. *Plātōnis stūdiōsus audiendi fuit*, *He was fond of hearing Plato*. Cic.

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars, scientia, consuetudo, cupiditas, libido, studium, consilium, voluntas, spes, potestas, facultas, difficultas, occasio, tempus, genus, modus, ratio, causa, gratia*, etc.

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their opposites: *avidus, cupidus, studiosus—consciens, gnarus, ignarus—peritus, imperitus, insuetus*, etc.

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vera ac falsa diiudicandi, the art of distinguishing true things from the false. Cic.

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejiciendi iudicum potestas, the power of challenging (of) the judges. Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *iudicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri*, etc. See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH *MEI, NOSTRI*, ETC.—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Copia placenti tui (of a woman), an opportunity of appeasing you. Ov. *Sui conservandi causa, for the purpose of preserving themselves.* Cic. *Vestri adhortandi causa, for the purpose of exhorting you.* Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum*, etc., hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt, These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal. Liv. *Leges pellendi claros viros, laws for driving away illustrious men.* Tac. *Proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis, He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity.* Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (393, 400. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cupido Stygios innare lacus, the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes. Virg. *Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

GERUND.—*Quum solvendo non essent, Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. *Aqua utilis est bibendo, Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—*Locum oppido condendo cæperunt, They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. *Tempora demetendis fructibus accommodata, seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

Firmandæ valetudinî in Campaniam concessit, He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health. Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dæcemviri, triumviri, comitia*:

Dæcemvros lēgibus scribendis creāvimus, We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws. Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

GERUND.—*Ad discendum præpensi sumus, We are inclined to learn (to learning).* Cic. *Inter ludendum, in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—*Ad colendos agros, for cultivating the fields.* Cic. *Ante condendam urbem, before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

Ad placandum deos pertinet, It tends to appease the gods. Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking*, etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with *ad*, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun:

Ad imitandum mihi præpositum exemplar illud, That model has been set before me for imitation. Cic. *Attribuit Italiâ vastandam (for ad vastandum) Cætilinæ, He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged).* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

GERUND.—*Mens discendo alitur, The mind is nourished by learning. Cic. Salutem hominibus dando, by giving safety to men. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Legendis oratoribus, by reading the orators. Cic.*

II. With Prepositions:

GERUND.—*Virtutes cernuntur in agendo, Virtues are seen in action. Cic. Deterrere a scribendo, to deter from writing. Cic.*

GERUNDIVE.—*Brutus in liberanda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country. Cic.*

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *in*; sometimes after *a* (ab), *de*, *ex* (e); very rarely after *cum* and *pro*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In tribuendo suum cuique, in giving every one his own. Cic.

3. WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time, separation, etc.*:

Incipiendo refūgi, I drew back in the very beginning. Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in Um.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgātī vēnērunt res rēpētītum, Deputies came to demand restitution. Liv. Ad Cēsārem congrātulātum convēnērunt, They came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dedit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bonos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum ire, (= ultisci) injurias festinat, *He hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (215, III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brutum visum iri a me puto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 489.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*. See 563. 5 ; 564. 2 ; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles*. See 573. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429) :

Quid est tam jucundum auditu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing) ? Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jucundus, optimus—facilis, proclivis, difficilis—incredibilis, memorabilis—honestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are : *auditu, cognitu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions :

1) By *ad* with the *Gerund* : Verba ad audiendum jucunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the *Infinitive* : Facile est vincere, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By a *Finite Mood* with an *adverb* : Non facile dijudicatur amor fictus, *Pre-tended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

PECULIARITIES.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. *Plāto scribens mortuus est, Plato died while writing*. Cic.

573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Sāpiens bōna semper plācītūra laudat, The wise man praises blessings which will always please (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, The grape, when it has ripened (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 590.

2. For the Participle with *habeo*, see 383. 1. 2).

II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns:

Anīmus se non vīdens ālia cernit, The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things. Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta epistōla*, a written letter; *mortuus*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum*: *occupātī erant*, they were occupied; as a verb, *hād been occupied*.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause:

Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantés imprôbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time :

Plâtô scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itûri in proelium cānunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means :

Sol ôriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Milltes rônuntiant, se perfîdiam vëritôs rêvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

III. Condition :

Mendāci hōmîni ne vërum quîdem dicenti crêdëre non sôlëmus, *We are not want to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rêluctante nâtûra, irrîtus lābor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession :

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tāmēn flêgitäre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose :

Perseus rêdiit, belli cāsum tentâtûrus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trûcidandos Cêthêgo, *He assigned us to Cêthêgus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but* :

Classem dëvictam cêpit, *He conquered and took the fleet (took the fleet conquered).* Nep. Re consentientes vöcâbülis diffêrebant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of* :

In âmicis sêlgendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hômêrus fuit ante Rômam conditam, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome (before Rome founded).* Cic.

581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

Miserrum est, nihil proficientem angere, It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything. Cic. *Non erubescens, without blushing.* Cic.



CHAPTER VI

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientes feliciter vivunt, The wise live happily. Cic. *Facile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. *Haud aliter, not otherwise.* Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns :

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles :

Minime largitor dux, a leader by no means liberal. Liv. *Pöpus late rex, a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively).* Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied :

Marius, plane vir, Marius, truly a man. Cic. *Omnes circa pöpuli, all the surrounding peoples.* Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are : *non*, *ne*, *haud*.

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs ; *haud mirabile*, not wonderful ; *haud aliter*, not otherwise. *Ne* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vide* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *non modo non* and in *non solum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *verum*, followed by *ne—quidem* or *vix* (rarely *etiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first :

Assentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero quidem digna est. Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man. Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non* ; *si minus* = *si non*. *Sin aliter* has nearly the same force as *si minus*.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

Nihil non arröget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Nêque hoc Zêno non videt, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

Nonnômo, *some one*; nonnihil, *something*; nonnunquam, *sometimes*.

Nêmo non, *every one*; nihil non, *every thing*; nunquam non, *always*.

2. After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nêque—nêque, nêve—nêve*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

Non prætereundum est ne id quidem, *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nêmo unquam nêque poëta nêque ôrator fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ita* mean *so, thus*. *Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ita—et* (503. 4). *Adêo*, to such a degree or result; *tam, tantôperè*, so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantôperè* before verbs.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes:

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union:

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sênâtus pöpulusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec ôrat difficile, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. LIST. See §10. 1.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et*. *Nêque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*. *Et* and *etiam* sometimes mean *even*.

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness; *similis, dissimilis, similiter, par, pariter, æque, ælius, aliter, sêcus: æque ac*, equally as; *aliter atque*, otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. QUE, AC, ATQUE.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. ETIAM, QUOQUE, ADEO, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quôque* follows the word which it connects; *is quôque*, he also. *Etiam*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quôque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. CORRELATIVES.—Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, both—and*; but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; *non solum (non môdo, or non tantum)—sed etiam (vêrum etiam), not only—but also*; *nêque (nec)—nêque (nec), neither—nor*; *nêque (nec)—et (que), not—but (and)*; *et—nêque (nec), (both)—and not*.

6. OMITTED.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiaque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation :

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own. Liv. *Duâbus tribusve hōris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 2.

2. *AUT, VEL, VE.*—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut verum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pōtius. istam* or *dīcam: laudātur vel istam amātur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non honor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. *SIVE (ut—ve)* does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

Cūpio me esse clementem, sed me inertiae condemno, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction. Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 3.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Sed* and *etrum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vero* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atque* often introduces an objection; *ceterum*, but still, as to the rest; *tamen*, yet.

3. COMPOUNDS OF TAMEN ARE: *attamen, sedtamen, veruntamen*, but yet.

4. *AUTEM* AND *VERO* follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vera*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is followed by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

In umbra igitur pugnabimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade. Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 4.

2. OTHER WORDS.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, quambrem, quapropter, quare, quocirca*.

3. *IGITUR*.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur*, this one therefore. After a digression *igitur, sed, sed tamen, etrum, etrum tamen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say: Sed si quis; If any one, I say*.

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Difficile est consilium: sum enim solus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone. Cic. *Et enim jus amant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See §10. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

P̄ruit quum n̄cesse erat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ego in Sicilia sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also 811. 1; 521-528.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet*; *nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, ita est, *It is as you desired.* Cic. V̄lut si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also 811. 2; 508, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as*; tam—quam quod maxime, *as much as possible*; non minus—quam, *not less than*; non magis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and ut—ita with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by the with the comparative: ut maxime—ita maxime, *the more—the more*.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est conciliū dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also 811. 3; 508, 507.

1. Nisi, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and nisi quod, *except that*, may be used even in affirmative sentences. Nisi may mean *than*. Nihil aliud nisi = *nothing further (more, except)*; nihil aliud quam = *nothing else (other than)*.

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also 811. 4; 515, 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse oportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also 811. 5; 489-499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also 811. 6; 489-499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so.* Cic. See also 811. 7; 517, 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quasiēras, nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also 811. 8; 846. II., 525, 526.

IV. INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, and sometimes with certain cases of nouns.

3. Some parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (*peace*), *be still!* miserum, miserabile, *sad, lamentable!* Oro, *pray!* Age, *haste, come, well!* mehercules, *by Hercules!* per deum fidem, *in the name of the gods!* audeas = si audeas (*for audies*), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

II. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

Cluilius rex moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv.

NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

Servius regnavit, *Servius reigned.* Liv.

VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hamilcārem impēratōrem fecerunt, They made Hamilcar commander. Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rogāvit, He asked me my opinion. Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et triginta regnāvit annos, He reigned thirty-seven years. Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambulare, to walk five miles. Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, The messenger returns to Rome. Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Capita velāmur, We have our heads veiled. Virg. Nūbe humeros amictus, with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud. Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me miserum, Ah me unhappy! Cic.

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384):

Tempōri cedit, He yields to the time. Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Malo est hominibus avaritia, Avarice is (for) an evil to men. Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnibus carum est, It is dear to all. Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtemperatio legibus, obedience to the laws. Cic. *Congruenter naturae, agreeably to nature.* Cic.

GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Catonis orationes, Cato's orations. Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avidus laudis, desirous of praise. Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to (were of) the enemy. Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With *misereor* and *miseresco*:

Miserere laborum, pity the labors. Virg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *remiscoor*, and *obliviscoor*:

Meminit praeteritorum, He remembers the past. Cic.

III. With *refert* and *interest*:

Interest omnium, It is the interest of all. Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing*:

Te amicitiae commonefacit, He reminds you of friendship. Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting*:

Viros sceleris arguis, You accuse men of crime. Cic.

III. *Miseret, Poenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget*:

Eorum nos miseret, We pity them. Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

ABLATIVE.

XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilitate laudatur, It is praised because of its usefulness. Cic.

XXII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendidit auro patriam, He sold his country for gold. Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without **QUAM** are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amabilius virtute, Nothing is more lovely than virtue. Cic.

XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, longer by one day. Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With **utor, fruor, fungor, pōtor, vescor**, and their compounds:

Plurimis rebus fruimur, We enjoy very many things. Cic.

II. With **fido, confido, nitor, innitor**:

Salus veritate nititur, Safety rests upon truth. Cic.

III. With **VERBS and ADJECTIVES of PLENTY and WANT**:

Non ægeo medicina, I do not need a remedy. Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus, and frētus**:

Digni sunt amicitia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auctoritate tua nobis opus est, We need your authority. Cic.

XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. **NAMES OF TOWNS** drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the **PLACE IN WHICH** by the Locative (421):

In Italia fuit, He was in Italy. Nep. Ex Africa, from Africa. Liv. Athenis fuit, He was at Athens. Cic. Romae fuit, He was at Rome. Cic.

XXVII. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Sabinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Caedem a vobis depello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octogésimo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtute adolescens, *a youth of the highest virtue*. Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nomine, non potestate fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power*. Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad amicum, *to a friend*. Cic. In Italia, *in Italy*. Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortuna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animal, quod sanguinem habet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego reges ejeci, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesieras nonne pütärem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsitan quaerätis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Väleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT is used (489),

I. With *ut, ne, quo, quin, quöminus*:

Enitütur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With *qui = ut is, ut ego, tu, etc.*:

Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) consülèrent Apollinem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With *dum, mödo, dummödo*:

Mödo permäneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quäsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, välut, välut si*:

Välut si ädesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, nisi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis*:

Si välim nüméräre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With *licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum*, although:
Licet irrideat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (*licet*) **is**, **quum** **ego**, etc., though he:
Absolvite Verrem, qui (quum is) fateatur, Acquit Verres, though he confesses. Cic.

III. Generally with **etiam**, **tametsi**, **etiamsi**:
Esi optimum sit, even if (though) it be most excellent. Cic.

XLIII. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON** is used (517),

I. With **quum** (*cum*), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.
Quum vita metus plena sit, since life is full of fear. Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpere juvenutem, because (on the ground that) he corrupted the youth. Quint.

XLIV. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME** with the accessory notion of **CAUSE OR PURPOSE** is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **donec**, **quoad**, until:

Expectas, dum dicat, You are waiting till he speaks, i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antequam**, **priusquam**, before:

Antequam de re publica dicam, before I (can) speak of the republic. Cic.

XLV. The **Subjunctive** is used in **INDIRECT QUESTIONS** (525):

Quid dies ferat, incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic.

XLVI. The **Subjunctive by Attraction** is often used in clauses dependent upon the **Subjunctive** (527):

Vereor, ne, dum minuire velim laborem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic.

XLVII. The **Subjunctive** is generally used in the **Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses** of the **Oratio Obliqua** (529):

Respondit, cur veniret, He replied, why did he come. Caes. *Scribit Labieno veniat, He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

IMPERATIVE.

XLVIII. The **Imperative** is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Iustitiam cole, Practise justice. Cic.

INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentimus cillere ignem, We perceive that fire is hot. Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Venerunt res repetitum, They came to demand restitution. Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Sapientes feliciter vivunt, The wise live happily. Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. GENERAL RULES.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place :

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anímus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiádes Athénas libérávit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words :

I. BEGINNING.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence :

Silent lāges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmīdōri Rēmus dēdītūr, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Igni āger vastābātūr, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. END.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence :

Nōbis non sātisfācit ipse Demosthēnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consūlātum pētīvit nunquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quaestio subdīffīcīlis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. SEPARATION.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation :

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incidunt nēcessāriāe, *Sometimes necessary re-proofs occur.* Cic. Justītiāe fungātūr officiis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second :

Frāgīle corpus ānīmus sempiternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other :

Ad sēnem sēnex de sēnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se āliis ālii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both :

Pācis et artes et glōria, both the arts and the glory of peace. Liv. *Bellicis et artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

Haec percontatio ac denuntiatio belli, this inquiry and this declaration of war. Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :

Hōnōris certāmen et glōriae, a struggle for honor and glory. Cic. *Agri omnes et maria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

Pōpūlus Rōmānus decrevit, The Roman people decreed. Cic. *Hērōdōtus, pāter histōriae, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Liber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjacet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman. Liv. *Cātōnis orātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

Magna civium pēnuria, a great scarcity of citizens. Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

Fācile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. *Omni aetati communis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avīdus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

Glōria virtutem sēquitur, Glory follows virtue. Cic. *Mundus deo paret, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *Vehēmenter dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Glōria ducitū, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Facillime cognoscuntur adolescentes, Most easily are the young men recognized. Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scythia bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians. Nep. *Mors propter brevitatem vite nunquam longe abest, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

601. **MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.**—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehementer dixit, He spoke very vehemently. Cic. *Congruenter nature vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. **SPECIAL WORDS.**—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Medea illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Justitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tenuis* and *versus* follow their cases:

Id Asiam profugit, He fled into Asia. Cic. *Collo tenuis, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Res qua de agitur, the subject of which we are treating. Cic. *Italiam contra, over against Italy.* Virg.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 164, 9 and 167, 3.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *oro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great. Cic. *Ad bene vivendum, for living well.* Cic. *Per te deos oro, I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. *Per ego vos deos = per deos ego vos oro (oro understood). I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions and Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *vero*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Si peccavi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me. Cic. *Il qui superiores sunt, those who are superior.* Cic. *Ipse autem omnia videbat, But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audivit, as he heard this. Nep. *Quae quum ita sint, since these things are so.* Cic.

2. *NE—QUIDEM* takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidis quidem, not even in the towns. Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals:

Ex me quidem nihil audiet, He will hear nothing from me. Cic.

4. *Que, ve, ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plerumque*, for *adve*, etc., or to the people; *in forique* = *inque foro*, and in the forum. *Apud quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa carere non possunt, They are not able to do without this villa. Cic. *Non fuit Jupiter metuendus, Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brutus, quod dicam, Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus. Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies ferat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic. *Exitus fuit orationis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse, The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 598.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements :

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence :

Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout.* Cæs. Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause :

Quum quiescunt, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quis sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal, conditional, and concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—quid, talis—qualis, tantus—quantus, tum—quum, ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui, quod, quantus, quum, ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause :

Enititur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia florescant, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.
P R O S O D Y.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.¹

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura; *ālius* for *ālius*, *cōgo* for *coigo*, *occīdo* for *occae-*
do, *nīl* for *nihil*.

1. *Pras* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *prædictus*, *præustus*.

2. *Ua*, *us*, *ui*, *uo*, and *wu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

¹ Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:¹

Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ab rūpe, pēr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,² except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dūplex, dgri, pātrea.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tēmessa, cfēnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *ab-rumpo, ab-rōgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *acer, acris.*

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bi-jūgus, quadri-jūgus.*

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

Pīus, pīae, dōcō, trāho.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I.: *auldī*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *aio*.

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *dīdī*; and sometimes in *fīdēi*, *rēi*, *spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pompēius*,—(3) in *ēheu*.

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fio*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam, fīdām*, but *fīerī*,—(2) in the genitive *āiūs*. In other genitives *i* in *iūs* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *aliūriūs* is short,—(3) in *dīus*, *a, um*, for *dīovs*, *a, um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**,—is common in *ōhe*.

¹ Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

² *Qu*, *gu*, and *eu*, when *u* has the sound of *w*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *der, Aenēas, Briseis, Mēnēlāus, Trōes*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*ea, ia, ēua, iua, don, ion, dīs, dīs, dīus*: *Mēdēa, Alexandria, Pēncua, Dārīus, Orion*.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

a, dā, tē, sē, dē, sī, quī, dō, prō, tū, dōs, pēs, sīs, bōs, sūs, pār, sōl.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quē, vē, nē, cē, tē, pē, plē*.

2. Monosyllables in *b, d, l, m, t*: *āb, ād, fēl, sūm, ēt*; except *sāl, sōl*.

3. *An, bis, cis, cor, ēs, fās, fēr, in, is, nēc, ōs* (ossis), *pēr, tēr, quā* (indefinite), *quē, vēr*; probably also *vās* (vadis), and sometimes *hēc* and *hōc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings *a, e, and y* are short; *i* and *u*, long; *o*, common:

Viā, mārīā, mārē, mīsŷ; mārī, audi, fructū, cornū; āmō, sermō.

615. *A final* is short: *mensā, templā, bōnā*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A final* is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā, bōnā, illā*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenādā, Pallā*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *āmā, cūrā; cīrā, juxtā, anted, frustrā*. Except *quā, quā, ejā, and pūtā* used adverbially.

616. *E final* is short: *servē, urbē, rēgē*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E final* is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *epūdōmē, rē, diē*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdīā, prīdīā, postrīdīā, quārē*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē, mētē*.

8. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mōnē, dōcē*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cūcē*.

4. In *ferē, fermē, ohē*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē, rectē*. Except *bēnē, mālē, infernē, internē, supernē*.

617. **Y** *final* is short: *mīstŷ, mōlŷ, cōtŷ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mīstŷ = mīstŷi*.

618. **I** *final* is long: *servī, bōnī, audī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* *final* is,

1. COMMON in *mihī, tībī, sībī, vī, ūbī*. But

Observe compounds *ibidem, ibique, ubique, ubinam, ubique, ubique, nescībī, sicūbī*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nīstī, quāstī, cūstī* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *ai* of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Troāstī*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: *Alexī, Pāridī*.

Uti follows the rule, but not the compounds, *utinam, utique, sicūti*.

619. **U** *final* is long: *fructū, cornū, dictū*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indū* for *in*, and *nēnū* for *non*.

620. **O** *final* is common: *āmō, sermō, virgō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* *final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *servō, illō, quō*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *schō, Argō*,—(3) in Adverbs: *falsō, multō, ergō, quāndō, omnīnō*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duō, ūgō, octō*, and the adverbs *cūō, illūō, immō, mōdō*, and its compounds, *dummōdō, quōmōdō*, etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **o** are long;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, are short:

alēc, illūc; illūd, consūl, āmēm, carmēm, āmōr, cāpūt.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnēc* and *liēc*.

2. *M* *final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.
See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) *en* is long; often also *an*, *in*, *on*, *yn*: *Hymēn*, *Anchiēn*, *Tiān*, *Delphīn*, *Actaeōn*, *Phoregōn*,—(2) *er* is long in *aēr*, *aethēr*, *erātēr*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. RULE VII.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings *as*, *es*, and *os* are long; *is*, *us*, *ys*, short:

āmās, *mensās*, *mōnēs*, *nūbēs*, *hōs*, *servōs*; *āvis*, *urbīs*, *bōnūs*, *servūs*, *chlāmŷs*.

623. *As final* is long: *Aeneās*, *bōnās*, *illās*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anēs* and in a few Greek nouns in *ās*: *Arōs*, *lampās*.

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādēs*, *hērōēs*.

624. *Es final* is long: *nūbēs*, *mōnēs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (Itis), *obēs* (Idis), *interpēs* (ētis). Except *ādēs*, *ariēs*, *pāriēs*, *Cērēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bīpēs*, *tripēs*, etc.

2. In *pēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs*, *pōtēs*.

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs*, *Troādes*,—(2) in a few neuters in *es*: *Hippōmēnēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmōsthēnēs*.

625. *Os final* is long: *custōs*, *virōs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compēs*, *impēs*, *exēs*.

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Delōs*, *mēlōs*.

626. *Is final* is short: *āvis*, *cānis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs*, *servīs*, *vōbīs*.

Hence *forīs*, *grātīs*, *īngrātīs*.

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quirīs* (Itis), *Sālāmīs* (Inis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs*.

Māvis, *quīvis*, *ūtervis* follow the quantity of *vis*.

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs*, *vēlīs*, *nōlīs*, *mālīs*.

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmācōrīs*, *dōcōurīs*.

627. *Us final* is short: *servūs, bonūs*.EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūts), *tellūs* (ūris).But *pōlūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. *fructūs*.3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, triphūs*.But we have *Oedipūs* and *pōlypūs*.628. *Ys final* is short: *chlāmŷs, chēlŷs*.EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnŷs* for *Erynnyss*.

II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.*Sermōnis*, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *amās, amātis, amabātis*.*Amātis* has one increment, *amabātis* two.631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments. ThusIn *ser-mōn-i-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u-e-ra-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.I. *Increments of Declension.*632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, *a* and *o* are long; *e, i, u,* and *y*, short:*aetas, aetātis, aetātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;*

fulgur, fulgūris; chlāmys, chlamýdis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; miser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātūr, satūri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. A in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannibāl, Hannibālis; Caesar, Caesāris.*
Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ās**: *poēma, poēmātis; Pallas, Pallādis.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ānas, mas, vas* (vādis),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *az*.

634. O in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters in Decl. III.: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ādor* (adōris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant; *inops, inōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, lēpus,—compos, impos, mēmor, immēmor,—Allobrox, Cappadox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Macedō, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhetor, Hector*,—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aēdonis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trīpus* (ōdis), *Oedīpus*.

635. E in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puēri; liber, libēri.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fidēi, rēi*, and *epēi*; as *dīdi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sirēn, Sirēnis.* So *Anio, Anienis.*

3. Of *Celtiber, Iber, ver,—hāres, lēcūples, merces, quies, inquies, rēquies, plebs,—lex, rex, ālex, ūlex, verrex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *lēbes, lebētis; crāter, crātēris.*

636. I in the increments of declension is short: *miles, militis, militibus; anceps, ancipitis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radicis; felix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendix, cōlūa, Cūlia, filia, fornīa, nīa, pia, edlīa, strīa*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *die, glis, lis, vis, Quiris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending *ius*, see 612. 3.

637. U in the increments of declension is short: *duz, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; satur, satūri*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in *us* with the genitive in *uris, utis, udis*: *jus, jūris; salus, salutis; pālus, palūdis*. Except *intercus, Ligus, pēcus*.
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, plus, Pollux*.

638. Y in the increments of declension is short: *chlamys, chlamydis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ynīs*, and in a few others.

II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), *a, e, and o* are long; *i* and *u* short:

āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgimus, sūmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fēro, vōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fērēbam* and *vōlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dādīmus* has but one increment *dī*.

640. A in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of *do*: *dūrs, dābam, circumdābam*.

641. E in the increments of conjugation is long: *mōnēre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before *r*,

1. In the tenses in *ram, rim, ro*: *āmāvērām, amavērīm, amavēro; reserat, reserēt*.

2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regēris, regērem, regērer*.

3. In the Fut. ending *bēris, bēre*: *āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris*.

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending *erunt*: *stātērunt* for *steterunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 689. IV.

642. O in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgētōte*.

643. I in the increments of conjugation is short: *rēgitis, reximus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *imus* of the Perf.: *audire, audiōi, auditum*; *sentio, sentimus, sensimus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in *ivi* and *itum* (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of Perf.: *trivimus*): *cūpioi, cupivērat, cupītus*; *pētioi, petītus*; *cūpesioi, cūpesitūrus*. *Gāveius* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *imus* and *itis* of Pres. Subj.: *simus, sitis*; *velimus, velitis* (289. 8).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolūtōte*, and in the different persons of *ibam, ibo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings *rimus* and *ritis* of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *amāverimus, amāveritis*.

644. U in the increments of conjugation is short: *vōlūmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vōlūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

645. RULE X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. *ābrum, ācrum, ātrum*:

flābrum, simūlācrum, ātrūrum.

II. *ēdo, ido, ūdo*; *āgo, igo, ūgo*:

dulcēdo, cūpido, solūtūdo; *vōrāgo, ōrigo, aerūgo*.

III. *āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, ine, one*—*in patronymica*:

Ptōlēmais, Chrysēis, Mīnōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrisiōne.

Except *Dāndis, Phōcdis, Thēōdis, Nērēis*.

IV. *āla, ile*; *ālis, ālis, ūlis*:

quērēla, ōvile; *mortālis, fidelis, cūrūlis*.

V. *ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus*; *āna, ēna, ōna, ūna*:

urbānus, ēgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus; *membrāna, hābēna, annōna, lācōna*.

Except *galbānus*.

VI. *āris, ārus*; *ōrus, ōsus*; *āvus, ivus*:

sālūtāris, āvārus; *cānōrus, ānimōsus*; *octāvus, aestivus*.

VII. *ātus, itus, ūtus ; ātim, itim, ūtim ; ētum, ēta :*

ālātus, turrītus, cornūtus ; singulātim, vīrtim, tribūtum ; quercētum, mōnēta.

Except (1) *ānālītus, fortūlītus, grātūlītus, hālītus, hospītus, eervītus, spirītus*, (2) *affātum, elātum*, and adverbs in *itus*, as *divinītus* ; and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. *ēni, īni, ōni,—in distributives :*

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short :

I. *ādes, lādes, īdes,—in patronymics :*

Aenēādes, Lāertiādes, Tantālides.

Except (1) those in *ides* from nouns in *eus* and *es* ; as, *Pēlides* (Peleus), *Neoclides* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphidrāides, Amygolides, Bēlides, Cōrōnides, Lycourgides*.

II. *iācus, īcus, idus :*

Cōrinthiācus, mōdīcus, cūpīdus.

Except *āmicus, antiqus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdicus*.

III. *ōlus, ōla, ōlum ; ūlus, ūla, ūlum ; cūlus, cūla, cūlum,—in diminutives :*

filiōlus, filiōla, atriōlum ; hortūlus, virgūla, oppidūlum ; floscūlus, particūla, mūnuscūlum.

IV. *ētas, itas,—in nouns ; iter, itus,—in adverbs :*

piētas, vēritas ; fortiter, divinītus.

V. *ātīlis, īlis, bīlis,—in verbals ; īnus,—in adjectives denoting material or time :*

versātilis, dōcilis, amābilis ; ādāmāntīnus, cedrīnus, crastīnus, diūtīnus.

Except *mūtūtīnus, rēpentīnus, vespertīnus*.

1. *īlis* in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long : *civilis, hostilis, puerilis, virilis*.

2. *Inus* denoting *characteristic* (325) usually has the penult long : *cānīnus, equīnus, mārīnus*.

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long :

I. *āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius :*

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbitāneus, cibārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.

II. *ābīlis, ātilis, āticus :*

amābilis, versātilis, āquātīcus.

III. *āginta, igit, ēsimus,—in numerals :*

nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsīmus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short :

I. *ibilis, itūdo, olentus, alentus.*

credibilis, solitūdo, vinolentus, opulentus.

II. *ūrio,—in desideratives :*

esūrio, emptūrio, partūrio.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In *māter, cēdo, scribo, dōno, ūtor*, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in *pāter, tāgo, mīco, sōno, ūter*, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection :

In DECLENSION,—*avis, avem ; nubes, nubium.*

In COMPARISON,—*lavis, levior, levissimus.*

In CONJUGATION,—*moneo, monēbam, monui.*

1. Position may however affect the quantity: *ager, āgri* (611, 612); *possum, pōtui ; solvo, solūtum ; volvo, vōlūtum.*

Here *d* becomes *ā* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum, solvo*, and *volvo*, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gēnui, gēnūtum*, and *pōno, pōsui, pōētum.*

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position :

jūvo, jūvi, jūtum ; foveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short :

bibi, dēdi, fidi, scidi, steti, stiti, tūli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

*citum, dātum, itum, litum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, situm, stitum.*¹

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

cādo, cēcīdi; cāno, cēcīni; disco, dīdici.

1. *Caedo* has *cēcīdi* in distinction from *cēcīdi* from *cādo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cūcurrē, mēmōrāi*.

II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

bōnus, bōnitas; tīneo, tīmor; ānīmus, ānīmōsus; cīvīs, cīvīcus; cūra, cūro.

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have *i* short: *clāmīto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

<i>hōmo,</i>	<i>hūmānus,</i>	<i>rēgo,</i>	<i>rēx, rēgis, rēgūla,</i>
<i>lāteo,</i>	<i>lāterna,</i>	<i>sēcus,</i>	<i>sēcūs,</i>
<i>lēgo,</i>	<i>lēx, lēgis,</i>	<i>sēdeo,</i>	<i>sēdes, sēdūlus,</i>
<i>mācer,</i>	<i>mācēro,</i>	<i>sēro,</i>	<i>sēmen,</i>
<i>mōveo,</i>	<i>mōbīlis,</i>	<i>suspīcor,</i>	<i>suspīcio,</i>
<i>persōno,</i>	<i>persōna,</i>	<i>tēgo,</i>	<i>tēgūla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

<i>ācer,</i>	<i>ācerbus,</i>	<i>nōtum,</i>	<i>nōta,</i>
<i>dīco,</i>	<i>dīcax,</i>	<i>ōdi,</i>	<i>ōdium,</i>
<i>dūco,</i>	<i>dux, dūcis,</i>	<i>sōpio,</i>	<i>sōpor,</i>
<i>fīdo,</i>	<i>fīdes,</i>	<i>vādo,</i>	<i>vādum,</i>
<i>lūceo,</i>	<i>lūcerna,</i>	<i>vōx, vōcis,</i>	<i>vōco.</i>
<i>mōles,</i>	<i>mōlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mōbīlīs*, *mōbīlīs*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lēgō*, *lēges*, *rēgō*, *rēges*, *sēdes*, from the nouns *lēgīs*, *lēges*, *rēgīs*, *rēges*, *sēdes*, or the verbs *dūcīs*, *dūces*, *fīdes*, from the nouns *dūcīs*, *dūces*, *fīdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

antē-fēro, dē-fēro, dē-dūco, in-aequalis, prō-dūco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

dē-līgo (lēgo), oc-cīdo (cādo), oc-cīdo (caedo).

¹ From *cisto*, but *stītum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Di*, *sē*, and *vē* are long, *rē* short: *ne* sometimes long and sometimes short:

didūco, *sēdūco*, *vēcors*, *rēdūco*, *nēdum*, *nēfas*:

1) *Di* is short in *dirīmo*, *disertus*.

2) *Ne* is long in *nēdum*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquittia*, and *nēva*. In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligio*, *rēligiāe*, *rēpūtī*, *rēpūtī*, *rēpūtī*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dico gives *-dīcus*; *jūro*, *-jēro*; *nōtus*, *-nītus*; *nābo*, *nūba*: *māllē-dīcus*, *de-jēro*, *cog-nītus*, *prō-nūba*.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

Prōcella, *prōcul*, *prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfectus*, *prōficiōcor*, *prōfūcor*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūguis*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōtervus*, and most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo*, *prōpāgo*, *prōpīno*, rarely in *prōcturo*, *prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

cāl-ē-fācio, *lāb-ē-fācio*, *bell-ī-gēro*, *aed-ī-fīco*, *art-ī-fex*, *ampl-ī-fīco*, *lōc-ū-ples*.

Before *ficio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *liquēficio*, *pātēficio*, *putrēficio*, *tēpēficio*. The first *e* in *vidēlicet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies*: *mēridies*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *quōtidie*, *trīdnum*, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bigae*, *trigae*, *quadrigae*, *ūlicet*, *scillicet*, *tibicen* for *tibiicen*.

But *i* is short in *didūm* and *quātrīdnum*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō*, *intrō*, *retirō*, and *quandō* in composition; as: *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retirōverto*, *quandōque*, but *quandōquidem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdie*, *quōsi*, *quōque*, and *siquidem*, have the first syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list:

I. Simple Feet.

DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	--	Lēgēs.
Trochee, ¹	<i>a long and a short,</i>	-- ∪	Lēgīs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	∪ --	Pārēns.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	∪ ∪	Pātēr.

TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	-- ∪ ∪	cārminā.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	∪ ∪ --	bōnītēs.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪	dōmīnūs.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	---	libertēs.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	∪ -- ∪	amicūs.
Amphimacer, ²	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	-- ∪ --	millītēs.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	∪ ---	dōlōrēs.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	--- ∪	pāstōrēs.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

¹ Sometimes called *Choree*.

² Also called *Orethia*.

Dispondee,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — — —	praescēptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	<i>double trochee,</i>	— ∪ — ∪	civitatēs.
Ditambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	∪ — ∪ —	āmōnītās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	mēmōriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — ∪ ∪	sēntentiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	∪ ∪ — —	addōlescēs.
Choriambus,	<i>trochee (choree), and iambus,</i>	— ∪ — ∪	impātēns.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trochee,</i>	∪ — — ∪	vērēcūndūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	∪ — — —	āmāverūt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>trochee and spondee,</i>	— ∪ — —	cōnditōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondee and iambus,</i>	— — ∪ —	auctōritās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondee and trochee,</i>	— — — ∪	ōrnamētā.
First Paeon,	<i>trochee and pyrrhic,</i>	— ∪ ∪ ∪	histōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	∪ — ∪ ∪	āmābillis.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and trochee,</i>	∪ ∪ — ∪	pūerilis.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ —	cōlōritās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripod*y, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Trieminēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Pentheminēris*, of two and a half; *Hephthemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribrach are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The Spondee is often substituted for the Iambus or the Trochee, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. **SIMPLE FEET.**—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. **EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.**—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. **COMPOUND FEET.**—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. **ARSIS AND THESIS.**—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

II. VERSES.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. **CAESURAL PAUSE.**—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the caesura¹ or caesural pause. See 673, 674.

663. **METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

¹ Caesura (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.¹ Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.
2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabum*, *in dissyllabum*, or *in trissyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcæic from Alcæus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Proverbial*, to proverbs, etc.

665. FINAL SYLLABLE.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. STANZA.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

¹ A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. **METRE.**—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.
2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. **SCANNING.**—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. **SYNALOEPHA.**—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel :

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets. But see *Virg. Aen.* III. 74.

3. Final *s* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrhin' connubia servas? *for* Pyrrhine connubia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets :

Ex omnibu' rēbus, *for* Ex omnibus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia*.

II. **SYNAERESIS.**—This is the contraction of two syllables into one :

aurēā, dēinde, dēinceps, idem, nsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *eadem*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohibeat*, pronounced *proibeat*.

2. In the different parts of *dæsum*, *æ* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dæsse*, *dæet*, *dærat*, *dærit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteo*: *antære*, *antærem*, *antæis*, *antæit*.

3. *i* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *dykēs* and *dytēs*, become *dykēs* and *dytēs*; *gēniū* and *tēniū* become *gēniū* and *tēniū*.

III. DIAERESIS.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two:

aurāi for aurae, Orphēūs for Orphēus, soluendus, for solvendus, silua for silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. SYSTOLE.—This is the shortening of a long syllable:

tillrunt for tillerunt, stëtërunt for stöterunt (235), vidë'n for vidëane.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. I, 2.

V. DIASTOLE.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable:

Prîämîdes for Prîämîdes.

1. This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the arts of the foot (660). In the latter case the syllable is said to be lengthened by the *ictus*.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

I. DACTYLIC VERSE.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,¹

$\begin{array}{c} \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{L} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } \\ \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } | \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } | \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } | \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } | \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } | \text{--} \text{ } \text{ } \end{array}$

Quădrupē- | dāntē pū- | trem sōnī- | tū quăſt | āngulā | cāmpum. Virg.

Armā vī- | rūmqūē cā- | nō Trō- | jās quī | primū āb | ōris. Virg.

Infān- | dūm rē- | gīnā jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. Virg.

*Illī * In- | tēr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchiā | tōllānt. Virg.*

¹ In this scale the sign ' marks the *ictus* (659).

² The final *t* of *illi* is elided by *Synaloepha* (669).

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. **ILLUSTRATION.**—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. **EFFECT OF DACTYL.**—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. **SPONDAIC LINE.**—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cārā dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mēg- | num Jōvīs | Incrē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armā- | ū tēn- | dūnt; || It | clāmōr ēt | āgmīnē | flectō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnā, || jū- | bēs rēnō- | vērē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nā jā*) of the third foot.

1. **RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.**—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdīdē- | rām; || vēr | illūd ē- | rāt, || vēr | māgnūs ē- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. **BUCOLIC CAESURA.**—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sōnī- | tūm dēdīt; || Indē sē- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. **FAULTY CAESURA.**—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pulvērē- | lēntūs ē- | quls fūrīt; || ōmnēs | ārmā rē- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vî- | rumque că- | nō, || Trō- | jaș quî | primūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaș | moșnă | tērrūt | impīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārmis. *Enn.*

675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Præcipi- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātāquē | fūnērē | mēns est. *Virg.*

Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtūrī- | ūnt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | ridīcū- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

$\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \text{—} || \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}} \text{ } \text{ } \text{ } | \frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$

Admōnī- | tū coc- | pī || fōrtiōr | āssē tū- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. **PENTAMETER.**—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. **ELEGIAC DISTICH.**—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmīlē- | pūltā vî- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fērī- | ūntūr ā- | rātris
Ossă, rū- | Inō- | sās || ōccūlīt | hērbă dō- | mās. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ibimūs | O sōcī- | I, cōmī- | tēsq̄ue. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter:

Arbōrī- | būsq̄ue cō- | mae. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee:

Mōntis ī- | māḡs. *Hor.*

II. ANAPAEISTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAEISTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies:

Vēniēnt : ānnis || saeculā : sēris.¹ *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (668. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemia*.

II. ANAPAEISTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody:

Dātā rēs : pātriae. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

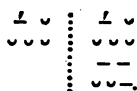
3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

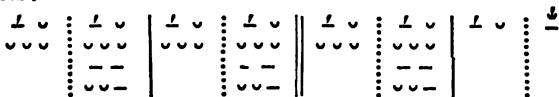
A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second:

¹ In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:



Nállä : vōx hū- | mēnā : cōnstāt || ābsquē : sēptēm | littē- : ris,
Ritē : vōcē- | lēs vō- : cāvīt || quās mē- : gistrā | Graēcl- : a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleumatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

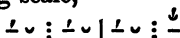
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipsē : sūmmis | sāxīs : fixūs || āspē- : ris ē- | vīcē- : rātus. *Enn.*

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Alā : dīv- | tēm mē- : net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brochy catalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

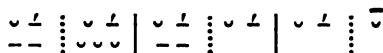
4. For *Phalacian*, see 691. V.

IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

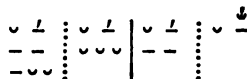
brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:



Vócā- : tūs āt- | quē nŭn : vŏcā- | tūs au- : dit. *Hor.*

II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first:

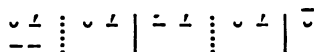


Quērūn- : tūr In | sīlvīs : āves. *Hor.*

Imbrēs : nīvēs- | quē cōm- : pārat. *Hor.*

Ast ōgō : vīclis- | sīm rī- : sēro. *Hor.*

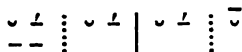
1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:



Pŭēr | quīs ōx | aulē | cāpīl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. L.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets. Its scale is,



Mānū : pŭēr | lŏquē- : cī. *Pet. Arb.*

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- : lē dī- | vītēm : mānet. *Hor.*

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quāntum in- : tellēx- | ī mōdō : sēnīs || sēntēn- : tīam | dē nŭp- : tīs. *Ter.*

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quôt côm- : môdâs | rês ât- : tâlî? || quôt au- : tem âdê- | mî cû- : rãa. *Ter.*

V. IONIC VERSE.

687. The Ionic a Minöre consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

$\cup \cup \cup - | \cup \cup \cup - | \cup \cup \cup - | \cup \cup \cup -$
 $\cup \cup \cup - | \cup \cup \cup -$

Sîmul âncîs | Tîbérînis | hûmêrûs lî- | vît în ândîs. *Hor.*

Nêquê sêgnî | pêdê victus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (XII. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadean Verse*, scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

$\cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup$
 $\cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup \cup | \cup - \cup$

Hâs cûm gêmî- | nê cômpeđê | deditât cû- | tănâs. *Mart.*

VI. CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic*; or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratean*; with two, the *Asclepiadæan*; with three, the Greater *Asclepiadæan*.

I. The GLYCONIC has the following scale:

$\cup - | \cup \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup$
 $\cup - | \cup \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup$

Dônec | grâtûs êrãm | tibi. *Hor.*

II. The PHERECRATEAN is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

$\cup - | \cup \cup \cup \cup | \cup$
 $\cup - | \cup \cup \cup \cup | \cup$

Vix dū- | rârê cârî- | nae. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADEAN has the following scale:

— | ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ || ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ —

Maecē- | nēs ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ūbus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN has the following scale:

— | ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ || ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ || ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ —

Seu plā- | rēs hlēmēs, || seu trībūt || Jāpītēr al- | tīmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius:

— ∪ ∪ — | ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ —

Nāmqūē mē sīl- | vā || lūpūs īn | Sāblīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius:

— ∪ ∪ — | ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ || ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ —

Intēr aequē- | lēs ēquītāt, || Gāllicā nēc | lūpātīs. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:

693. DACTYLICO-IAMBIC VERSE.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ || ˘ ˘ : ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ : ˘ ˘

Jussūs āb- | Irē dō- | mām, || fērē- : bār In- | cērtō : pēde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Priapeian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. IAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

˘ ˘ : ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ : ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ || ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘

Nīvēs : quē dē- | dūcūt : Jōvēm : || nūc mārē, | nūc allū- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambodegus*.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (689. I. II.):

˘ - | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘ ˘ || ˘ - | ˘ ˘ ˘ ˘ | ˘

Quērēs | āridā rūs- | tīcā || cōnfūr- | mātā sēcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecratēan appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochees *quērēs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the *Dactylic Hexameter*. See 671.

697. OVID.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

698. HORACE.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyrics, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

B. *Stanzas of Three Verses.*

V. IONIC A MINORE (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.

- $$\begin{array}{l} 1. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - | \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - | \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - | \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - \\ \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - | \text{v} \text{ v } \text{f} - \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

In Ode III. 12.

C. Stanzas of Two Verses.

VI. LAMBIC TRIMETER AND LAMBIC DIMETER (683, 685).

- [illegible]

In the first ten Epodes.

VII. GLYCONIC AND ASCLEPIADEAN (689. I., III.).

1. $\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \vee \frac{1}{2} \vee \frac{1}{2} \vee \frac{1}{2}$
2. See IV. 1.

In twelve Odes: I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 8.

VIII. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TETRAMETER (671; 677. I.).

1. $\frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-}$
 2. $\frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \mid \frac{f}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-} \frac{v}{-}$

In two Odes: I. 7, 28, and Epode 12.

IX. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.
2. $\frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2} \cup \cup \mid \frac{1}{2}$

In Ode IV. 7.

X. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC TRIMETER (671, 688).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

XI. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XII. HEXAMETER AND IAMBICO-DACTYLIC (671, 694).

1. See VIII. 1.

2. $\begin{array}{ccccccc|ccccccc} \text{v} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In Epode 18.

XIII. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND DACTYLICO-IAMBIC (683, 693).

1. See VI. 1.

2. $\begin{array}{ccccccc|ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In Epode 11.

XIV. TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (681, 684).

1. $\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

2. $\begin{array}{ccccccc|ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In Ode II. 18.

XV. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (691. I.; 684).

1. $\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

XVI. ARISTOPHANIC AND GREATER SAPPHIC (691. III.; 690. II).

1. $\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

2. $\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In Ode I. 8.

D. Verses used Singly.

XVII. ASCLEPIADEAN (689. III.).

$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

XVIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN (689. IV.).

$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

XIX. IAMBIC TRIMETER (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.		Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.
Odes.	Metres.	4,	II.	26,	I.		
1,	XVII.	5,	I.	27,	II.		
2,	II.	6,	II.	28,	VII.		
3,	VII.	7,	I.	29,	I.		
4,	XV.	8,	II.	30,	XVII.		
5,	IV.	9,	I.				
6,	III.	10,	II.	BOOK IV.			
7,	VIII.	11,	I.	1,	VII.		
8,	XVI.	12,	III.	2,	II.		
9,	I.	13,	I.	3,	VII.		
10,	II.	14,	I.	4,	I.		
11,	XVIII.	15,	I.	5,	III.		
12,	II.	16,	II.	6,	II.		
13,	VII.	17,	I.	7,	IX.		
14,	IV.	18,	XIV.	8,	XVII.		
15,	III.	19,	I.	9,	I.		
16,	I.	20,	I.	10,	XVIII.		
17,	I.	BOOK III.		11,	II.		
18,	XVIII.	1,	I.	12,	III.		
19,	VII.	2,	I.	13,	IV.		
20,	II.	3,	I.	14,	I.		
21,	IV.	4,	I.	15,	I.		
22,	II.	5,	I.	EPODES.			
23,	IV.	6,	I.	Epodes.	Metres.		
24,	III.	7,	IV.	1,	VI.		
25,	II.	8,	II.	2,	VI.		
26,	I.	9,	VII.	3,	VI.		
27,	I.	10,	III.	4,	VI.		
28,	VIII.	11,	II.	5,	VI.		
29,	I.	12,	V.	6,	VI.		
30,	II.	13,	IV.	7,	VI.		
31,	I.	14,	II.	8,	VI.		
32,	II.	15,	VII.	9,	VI.		
33,	III.	16,	III.	10,	VI.		
34,	I.	17,	I.	11,	XIII.		
35,	I.	18,	II.	12,	VIII.		
36,	VII.	19,	VII.	13,	XII.		
37,	I.	20,	II.	14,	XI.		
38,	II.	21,	I.	15,	XI.		
BOOK II.		22,	II.	16,	X.		
1,	I.	23,	I.	17,	XIX.		
2,	II.	24,	VII.	SECULAR HYMN,			
3,	I.	25,	VII.		II.		

APPENDIX.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form, construction, or signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following :

1. **APHÆRESIS** takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word : *'et* for *est*.
2. **SYNOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word : *cirum* for *cirōrum*, *dæe* for *diæssæ*.
3. **APOCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word : *tūn'* for *tūne*.
4. **PROTHESIS** prefixes a letter or syllable to a word : *tētūli* for *tūli*.
5. **EPIENTHESIS** inserts a letter or syllable in a word : *Alcūmēna* for *Alcmēna*, *ālītum* for *ālīum*.
6. **PARAGOGÆ** adds a letter or syllable to a word : *diēter* for *diēi*.
7. **METATHESIS** transposes letters or syllables : *pistris* for *pristis*.
8. **ANTITHESIS** substitutes one letter for another : *volnus* for *vulnus*, *illī* for *illū*.

See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following :

I. ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words of a sentence :

Hæbitabat ad Jōvis (sc. templum), He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.
Liv. *Abiit, evāsit (et), He has gone, has escaped.* Cic.

1. **ASYNDETON** is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.
2. **ZEUGMA** is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:
Pācem an bellum gērens, whether at peace (āgens) or waging war. Sall.
3. **APOSTROPESIS**, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quos ego — sed mōtos præstat componere fluctus. Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves. Virg.

4. **PROVERBS** are often elliptical.

5. **ELLIPSIS OF FACTO**, **DICO**, **ORO**. See 460. 8; 602. II. 3.

II. PLEONASM is the use of superfluous words :

Erant itinēra duo, quibus itinēribus exire possent, There were two ways by which ways they might depart. Caes. *Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt, Both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Virg.

1. **POLYSYNDETON** is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. **HENDIADYS** is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armīs virisque, *for viris armātis, with armed men.* Tac.

3. **ANAPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses :
Me cuncta Itālia, me ūniversa civitas consulem dēclārāvit, *Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. **EPITHORA** is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses :

Laelius nāvus erat, doctus erat, *Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Monosyllable prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et* :

Et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis, *both in military and in civil offices.* Cic.

Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*, is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid cense* with a clause :

Illud te ōrūt diligens sis, *I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent.* Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidem*. See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet* :

Ut liceat permittitur = *licet, It is lawful (is permitted that it is, &c.).* Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, genus, modus*, and *ratio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another :

Pōpūlus lāte rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively).* Virg. Sērus (*sēro*) in coelum rēdeas, *May you return late to heaven.*

Hor. Vīna cādīs (*vinis cādos*) ōnērāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. **ANTIMETRIA** is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. **HYPALLAGE** is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. **SYNTHESIS** is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 488. 6 and 461.

4. **ANACOLUTHON** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

Sī, ut dicunt, omnes Graecos esse (*Grati sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses :

Praeter arma nihil erat sūper (*sūpererat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Vālet atque vivit (*vivit atque vālet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. **ANASTROPHE** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. **THESIS** is the separation of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another :

Rei publicae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic.
Naufrāgium fortunae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic.

II. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnatum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *Græcia* for *Græci*, *laurea* for *victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Statio mālē fida cārīnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgatos bōnus (for *mālus*) impērator vester non admisit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim, etenim, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum, credo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 508. 8.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulminis scior Alis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non opus est = perniciosum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHORS.

703. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age*.—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*.—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priecian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;
2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;
3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Cælendas, Nonas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Cælendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the second day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Cælendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Cælendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Cælendas, Nonas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nonas Januariæ*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nonas Jan.* or *I. ante Nonas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nonas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. *ANTE DIEM*.—Instead of *die*—*ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nonas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nonas Jan.*

4. As *INDECLINABLE NOUNS*.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cal.*, etc., *pridie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv.* *Ad pridie Nonas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. ¹	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas. ¹	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III. "	Nonas.	Nonas.	Nonas.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonas.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend. ²	XVIII. Calend. ²	XVI. Calend. ²
15	Idibus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend. ²	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) ³
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Cal. (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

¹ To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

² The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Apriles*.

³ The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = $18 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.*, and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. NIGHT WATCHES.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quinarius*, *dēnarius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As,	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius,	4 "
Quinarius,	8 "
Dēnarius,	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnarii,	\$4.00.

1. *AS*—THE UNIT OF MONEY.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{1}{6}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{1}{4}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{1}{3}$ a *triens*, $\frac{1}{2}$ a *quincunx*, $\frac{2}{3}$ a *semis*, $\frac{3}{4}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{1}{2}$ a *bes*, $\frac{1}{3}$ a *drana*, $\frac{1}{4}$ a *dectans*, $\frac{1}{2}$ a *deunx*.

2. SESTERTIUS, QUINARIUS, AND DENARIUS.—The *sestertius* contained originally 24 asses, the *quinarius* 5, and the *dēnarius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of asses in these coins was increased.

3. *AS*—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight*.—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*.—the *as* is then a foot or a jugerum (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a jugerum.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semita* is $\frac{1}{24}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hæres ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hæres ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{1}{4}$.

713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, viginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dūcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*.

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bina sestertia*, for duo *sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *décies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

Décies sestertium, 1,000,000 ($10 \times 100,000$) *sesterces*; Vicies sestertium, 2,000,000 ($20 \times 100,000$) *sesterces*.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Décies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension.

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *décies*, 1,000,000 *sesterces*.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

714. WEIGHT.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *semita*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *uncia*, $\frac{1}{8}$ = *duella*, $\frac{1}{16}$ = *stilleus*, $\frac{1}{32}$ = *sextula*, $\frac{1}{64}$ = *drachma*, $\frac{1}{128}$ = *scrupulum*, $\frac{1}{256}$ = *obolus*.

715. DRY MEASURE.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is $\frac{1}{8}$ of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *hēmina*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *ācētābūlum*, $\frac{1}{8}$ = *cyāthus*.

716. LIQUID MEASURE.—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULUR.**—Twenty *amphōras* make one *Cūleus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *urna*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *congius*, $\frac{1}{8}$ = *sextarius*, $\frac{1}{16}$ = *hēmina*, $\frac{1}{32}$ = *quartarius*, $\frac{1}{64}$ = *ācētābūlum*, $\frac{1}{128}$ = *cyāthus*.

717. LONG MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—*Palmipes* = $1\frac{1}{2}$ Roman feet; *cūbitus* = $1\frac{1}{2}$; *passus* = 5; *stādium* = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—*Palmus* = $\frac{1}{4}$ foot; *uncia* = $\frac{1}{16}$; *dīgītus* = $\frac{1}{12}$.

718. SQUARE MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: *uncia* = $\frac{1}{16}$, *sextans* = $\frac{1}{32}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

719. Names.

A. = Aulus.	L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
Ap. = Appius.	M. = Marcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. = Spūrius.
D. = Dēcimus.	N. = Nūmērius.	T. = Titus.
	P. = Publius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = faciendum cū- ravit.	Proc. = prōconsul.
Aed. = aedilis.	Id. = Idus.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bonum, felix, faustumque sit.
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.	Imp. = impērātor.	Quir. = Quirites.
Cal. (Kal.) = Cālendae.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Resp. = res publica.
Con. = consul.	Non. = Nōnae.	S. = sēnātus.
Coss. = consules.	O. M. = optimus max- imus.	S. C. = sēnātus con- sultum.
D. = divus.	P. C. = patres conscrip- ti.	S. D. P. = sālūtem di- cit plūrimam.
D. D. = dōno dedit.	Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.	S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpūlusque Rōmā- nus.
D. M. = diis mānibus.	P. R. = pōpūlus Rō- mānus.	Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plē- bis.
D. S. = de suo.	Pr. = praetor.	
D. S. P. P. = de sua pēcūnia pōsuit.	Praef. = praefectus.	
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rō- mānus.		
F. = filius.		

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But, in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind:

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338, 2, and 341, 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 214.

A.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Abdo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, 273.
 Ab-igo. See <i>āgo</i>, 273, II.
 Ab-jicio. See <i>jācio</i>, 273, II.
 Ab-luo. See <i>luo</i>, 280.
 Ab-nuo. See <i>annuo</i>, 280.
 Abŏleo, ēre, ōvi, ūtum, 264, 1.
 Abŏlesco, ēre, ōlēvi, ōlītum, 277.
 Ab-rīpio. See <i>rāpio</i>, 275.
 Abs-con-do. See <i>abdo</i>, 273.
 Ac-cendo, ēre, i, censum, 273, III.
 Ac-cīdo. See <i>cādo</i>, 273, I. 2.
 Ac-cīno. See <i>cāno</i>, 273.
 Ac-cīpio. See <i>cāpio</i>, 273, II.
 Ac-cŏlo. See <i>cōlo</i>, 274.
 Ac-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbītum, 275.
 Acesco, ēre, ācui, —, 282.
 Ac-qui-ro. See <i>quaero</i>, 278, 2.
 Acuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Ad-do. See <i>abdo</i>, 273.
 Ad-īmo. See <i>ēmo</i>, 273, II.
 Adīpiscor, i, ādeptus sum, 283.
 Ad-ŏlesco. See <i>abŏlesco</i>, 277.
 Ad-ŏrior. See <i>ŏrior</i>, 288.
 Ad-spicio. See <i>aspicio</i>, 272, I. 2.
 Ad-sto. See <i>sto</i>, 261.
 Af-fēro. See <i>fēro</i>, 292.
 Agnosco. See <i>nosco</i>, 278, 3.
 Ag-grēdior. See <i>grādior</i>, 283.
 Ago, ēre, ēgi, actum, 273, II.
 Aio, <i>def.</i>, 297.
 Albeo, ēre, —, 267.
 Algeo, ēre, alsi, —, 269, I.
 Al-licio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221, 2;
 272, I. 2; 275.</p> | <p>Al-luo. See <i>luo</i>, 280.
 Alo, ēre, ālui, ālītum, altum, 274.
 Amb-igo. See <i>āgo</i>, 273, II.
 Ambio, 295, 3.
 Amīcio, ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Amo, 205.
 Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 283.
 Anŏo, ēre, anxi, —, 280.
 Annuo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Apāge, <i>def.</i>, 297.
 Apērio, ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 283.
 Ap-pāreo. See <i>pāreo</i>, 335; 301.
 Ap-pēto. See <i>pēto</i>, 278, 2.
 Ap-pīco. See <i>pīco</i>, 260.
 Ap-pōno. See <i>pōno</i>, 275.
 Arcesso, ēre, īvi, itum, 278, 2.
 Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 269, I.
 Aresco, ēre, ārui, —, 282.
 Arguo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Ar-rīpio. See <i>rāpio</i>, 275.
 A-scendo. See <i>scando</i>, 273, III.
 A-spergo. See <i>spargo</i>, 272, II.
 A-spicio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 272,
 I. 2.
 As-sentior, Iri, sensus sum, 288.
 As-sideo. See <i>sideo</i>, 270, II.
 At-texo. See <i>texo</i>, 275.
 At-tīneo. See <i>tīneo</i>, 268.
 At-tingo. See <i>tango</i>, 273.
 At-tollo. See <i>tollo</i>, 273.
 Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 271.
 Audio, 211.
 Au-fēro. See <i>fēro</i>, 292.
 Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, 269,
 II.
 Ave, <i>def.</i>, 297.</p> |
|---|---|

B.

Balbütio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Bătuo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Bibo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Blandior, iri, itus sum, 230.

C.

Cădo, ăre, cēcīdi, căsum, 273, I. 2.
 Caecütio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Caedo, ăre, cēcīdi, caesum, 273, I. 2.
 Călesco, ăre, călui, —, 282.
 Calveo, ăre, —, 287.
 Candeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Căneo, ăre, —, 287.
 Căno, ăre, cēcīni, cantum, 273.
 Căpesso, ăre, ivi, itum, 273, 2.
 Căpio, ăre, cēpi, captum, 222; 273, II.
 Carpo, ăre, si, tum, 272.
 Căveo, ăre, căvi, cautum, 270, II.
 Cădo, ăre, cessi, cessum, 272, II.
 Cădo, def., 297.
 Cello, obs. See *excello*, 274.
 Căno, 260, 2.
 Censeo, ăre, ui, censum, 268.
 Cerno, ăre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Cieo, ăre, cēvi, cētum, 269, 1.
 Cingo, ăre, cīxi, cinctum, 272.
 Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
 Clango, ăre, —, 281.
 Claudio, ăre, clausi, clausum, 272, II.
 Claudio, ăre (*to be lame*), —, 281.
 Co-ălesco, ăre, ălui, ăltum, 282.
 Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
 Coepi, def., 297.
 Cognosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Căgo, ăre, coăgi, coactum. See *ăgo*, 273, II.
 Col-lido. See *laedo*, 272, II.
 Col-ligo. See *lġgo*, 273, II.
 Col-luceo. See *lūceo*, 269.
 Călo, ăre, ui, cultum, 274.
 Com-ădo. See *ădo*, 291.
 Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, 283.
 Com-măveo. See *măveo*, 279.
 Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Compărio, ire, pări, pertum, 287.
 Compesco, ăre, pescui, —, 275.
 Com-pingo. See *pango*, 273.

Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 283.
 Com-pleo, ăre, ăvi, ătum, 264.
 Com-primo. See *primo*, 272, II.
 Com-pungo, ăre, punxi, punctum. See *pungo*, 273.
 Con-cădo. See *ădo*, 273, I. 2.
 Con-cădo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Con-căno. See *căno*, 273.
 Con-clădo. See *claudio*, 272, II.
 Con-căpisco, ăre, căpivi, căptum, 282.
 Con-cătio. See *quătio*, 272, II.
 Con-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 286.
 Con-ficio. See *făcio*, 273, II.
 Confit, def., 297.
 Con-fiteor. See *făteor*, 271.
 Con-fringo. See *frango*, 273, II.
 Congruo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Coniveo, ăre, nivi, nixi, —, 269, I.
 Con-săro. See *săro*, 276.
 Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
 Con-spicio, ăre, spexi, spectrum, 221, 2.
 Con-stătuo. See *stătuo*, 279.
 Con-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Consuesco, 297, I. 2.
 Consūlo, ăre, ui, tum, 274.
 Con-temno. See *temno*, 281.
 Con-texo. See *texo*, 275.
 Con-tingo. See *tango*, 273; 301.
 Con-vălesco, ăre, vălui, văltum, 282.
 Căquo, ăre, coxi, coctum, 272.
 Cor-răpio. See *răpio*, 275.
 Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 279.
 Crăbresco, ăre, crăbrui, —, 282, II.
 Crădo, ăre, credidi, creditum, 273.
 Crăpo, ăre, ui, itum, 260.
 Cresco, ăre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
 Căbo, ăre, ui, itum, 260.
 Cădo, ăre, cădi, căsum, 273, III.
 Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 Căpio, ăre, ivi, itum, 221; 278.
 Curro, ăre, cūcurri, cursum, 273, I. 2.

D.

Dă-cerpo, ăre, si, tum, 272, I. 1.
 Dăcet, *impers.*, 299.
 Dă-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Dă-fendo, ăre, i, fensum, 273, III.
 Dă-fătiscor. See *fătiscor*, 283.

Dē-sit, *def.*, 297.
 Dēgo, ēre, dēgi. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Dēleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
 Dē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Dē-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Dēmo, ēre, dempai, demptum, 272.
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Dē-prīmo. See *prīmo*, 272, II.
 Depso, ēre, ui, itum, tum, 275.
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273, III.
 Dē-silio. See *silio*, 285.
 Dē-sipio. See *sipio*, 278.
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 273.
 Dē-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 268.
 Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum, 272; 237.
 Dif-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Dignosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Di-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Di-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Di-rīgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, 272, I. 1.
 Disco, ēre, didici, —, 273.
 Dis-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 260.
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 288.
 Dis-plīceo. See *plīceo*, 265.
 Dis-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270, II.
 Di-stinguo. See *stinguo*, 281.
 Di-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Dītesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Divīdo, ēre, vīsi, vīsum, 272, II.
 Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 261.
 Dūceo, ēre, ui, tum, 268.
 Dōmo, āre, ui, itum, 260.
 Dūco, ēre, duxi, ctum, 272; 237.
 Dulcesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Dūresco, ēre, dūrui, —, 282, II.

E.

Edo, ēre, ēdi, ēsum, 273, II.; 291.
 E-do, ēre, ēdidi, editum, 273.
 Eff-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Egeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 E-līcio, ēre, ui, itum, 275.
 E-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 E-mīco. See *mīco*, 260.
 Emīneo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Emo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, 273, II.
 E-nēco, āre, ui, tum, 260.
 Eo, ire, iui, itum, 295.
 Esūrio, ire, —, itum, 284, 2.

E-vādo, ēre, vāsi, vāsum, 272, II.
 Evānesco, ēre, evānui, —, 282.
 Ex-ardesco, āre, arsi, arsum, 282.
 Excello, ēre, ui (rare), —, 274.
 Ex-clūdo. See *clūdo*, 272, II.
 Ex-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-ōlesco. See *abbōlesco*, 277.
 Expēdit, *impers.*
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 283.
 Ex-pērior, iri, pertus sum, 288.
 Ex-pleo. See *compleo*, 264.
 Ex-plīco. See *plīco*, 260.
 Ex-plōdo. See *plūdo*, 272, II.
 Ex-stinguo, ēre, stīnxi, stinctum, 272.
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 273.

F.

Fācesso, ēre, iui, i, itum, 278, 2.
 Fācio, ēre, fēci, factum, 221; 273, II.; 237.
 Fallo, ēre, fēfelli, falsum, 273, I. 2.
 Farcio, ire, farsi, fartum, farctum, 286.
 Fāri, *def.*, 297.
 Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 271.
 Fātisco, ēre, —, 281.
 Fātiscor, i, —, 283.
 Fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, 270, II.
 Fendo, *obs.* See *dēfendo*, 273, III.
 Fērio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.
 Fērōcio, ire, —, 284, 2.
 Ferveo, ēre, fervi, ferbui, —, 270, III.
 Fido, ēre, fīsus sum, 283.
 Fīgo, ēre, fīxi, fīxum, 272, II.
 Fīndo, ēre, fīdi, fīssum, 273, III.
 Fīngo, ēre, fīnxi, fīctum, 272, I.
 Fīo, fīōri, factus sum, 294.
 Flāveo, ēre, —, 267.
 Flecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
 Flōreo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Flōresco, ēre, flōrui, —, 282.
 Fluo, ēre, fluxi, fluxum, 279, 1.
 Fōdio, ēre, fōdi, fossum, 221; 273, II.
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297, III. 2.
 Fōveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 270, II.
 Frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, 273, II.
 Frāmo, ēre, ui, itum, 274.

Frendo, ēre, —, fressum, frēsum, 272, II.
 Frīco, āre, ui, ātum, tum, 260.
 Frīgeo, ēre, frīxi (rare), —, 269, I.
 Frondeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Fruor, i, fructus, fructus sum, 283.
 Fūgio, ēre, fūgi, fugitum, 221; 273, II.
 Fulcio, Ire, fulsi, fultum, 286.
 Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269, I.
 Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.
 Fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 273, II.
 Fungor, i, functus sum, 283.
 Fūro, ēre, ui, —, 274.

G.

Gannio, Ire, —, 284, 2.
 Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 271.
 Gāmo, ēre, ui, itum, 274.
 Gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, 272.
 Gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnitum, 274.
 Gliaco, ēre, —, 281.
 Grādior, i, gressus sum, 221; 283.
 Grandesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.
 Grāvesco, ēre, —, 282, II.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269, I.
 Haurio, Ire, hausi, haustum, haustūrus, hausūrus, 286.
 Hābeo, ēre, —, 267.
 Hisco, ēre, —, 281.
 Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Hortor, 226.
 Hūmeo, ēre, —, 267.

I.

Ico, ēre, Ici, ictum, 273, III.
 Il-līcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221; 272, I. 2.
 Il-līdo. See *laedo*, 272, II.
 Imbuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Imminuo, ēre, —, 267.
 Im-parco. See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Im-pertior. See *partior*, 288.
 Im-pingo. See *pango*, 273.

In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273, III.
 Incesso, ēre, Ivi, i, —, 278, 2.
 In-clīdo. See *cīdo*, 273, I. 2.
 In-clīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 In-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 260.
 In-cresco. See *creasco*, 277.
 In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 In-cūtio. See *quātio*, 272, II.
 Ind-Igeo, ēre, ui, —. See *ēgeo*, 266.
 Ind-Ipiscor. See *āpiscor*, 283.
 In-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Indulgeo, ēre, dulsi, dultum, 269, II.
 Ineptio, Ire, —, 284, 2.
 Infit, *def.*, 297.
 Ingruo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 In-nōtesco, ēre, nōtui, 282, II. 1.
 In-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 277.
 Inquam, *def.*, 297.
 In-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270, II.
 In-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 221.
 In-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Intel-līgo. See *līgo*, 273, II.
 Intērest, *impers.*, 301.
 Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 In-vētērasco, ēre, rāvi, rātum, 282.
 Irascor, i, —, 283.
 Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 279.

J.

Jācio, ēre, jūci, jactum, 221; 273, II.
 Jūbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, 269, I.
 Jūro, 260, 2.
 Jūvēnesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 262.

L.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, 283.
 Lācesso, ēre, Ivi, Itum, 278, 2.
 Lācio, *obs.* See *allīcio*, 272, I. 2.
 Lacteo, ēre, —, 267.
 Laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, 272, II.
 Lambo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Langueo, ēre, i, —, 270, III.
 Lāpīdat, *impers.*, 300.
 Largior, Iri, Itus sum, 288.
 Lāteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Lāvo, āre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 262.
 Lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, 273, II.

Lībet, *impers.*, 299.
 Liceor, ēri, itus sum, 271.
 Licet, *impers.*, 299.
 Līno, ēre, līvi, lēvi, lītum, 278.
 Linquo, ēre, līqui, —, 273, II.
 Līqueo, ēre, līqui (licui), 270, III.
 Līquet, *impers.*, 299.
 Līquor, i, —, 283.
 Lōquor, i, lōcūtus sum, 283.
 Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.
 Lūdo, ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 272, II.
 Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 280.

M.

Mācresco, ēre, macrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 282.
 Maereo, ēre, —, 267.
 Mālo, malle, mālui, —, 293.
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273, III.
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269, I.
 Mātūresco, ēre, mātūruī, —, 282, II. 1.
 Mēdeor, ēri, —, 271.
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.
 Mentior, iri, itus sum, 288.
 Mēreor, ēri, itus sum, 271.
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 272, II.
 Mētor, iri, mensus sum, 288.
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 275, II.
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 280.
 Mīco, ēre, ui, —, 260.
 Mīniscor, *obs.* See *commīniscor*, 283.
 Mīnuo, ēre, ui, itum, 279.
 Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 268.
 Mīsēreor, ēri, itus or tus sum, 271.
 Mīsēret, *impers.*, 299.
 Mītesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, 272, II.
 Mōlior, iri, itus sum, 288.
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mōlo, ēre, ui, itum, 274.
 Mōneo, ēre, ui, itum, 207.
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 270.
 Mōrior, i (iri), mortuus sum, 221; 283.
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270, II.

Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.

N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 283.
 Nascor, i, nātus sum, 283.
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 272, II.; 275, II.
 Neg-līgo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 264.
 Nē-queo, ire, ivi, itum, 296.
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ningō, ēre, ninxi, —, 280.
 Nīteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Nītor, i, nīsus, nixus sum, 283.
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 278, 3.
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 272.
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 280.
 Nuptūrio, ire, ivi, —, 284, 2.

O.

Ob-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Ob-dormisco, ēre, dormīvi, dormītum, 282.
 Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 283.
 Ob-mītesco, ēre, mītui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 277.
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ob-surdesco, ēre, surdui, —, 282.
 Ob-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 268.
 Oc-cīdo. See *cīdo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 273.
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 273, II.
 Occūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 274.
 Odi, *def.*, 297.
 Of-fendo. See *defendo*, 273, III.
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Olesco, *obsolete*. See *abōlesco*, 277.
 Opērio, ire, ui, tum, 285.
 Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
 Op-pērior, iri, pertus, peritus sum, 288.
 Ordior, iri, orsus sum, 288.
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ovat, *def.*, 297.

P.

Pāciscor, i, pactus sum, 283.
 Paenitet, *impers.*, 299.
 Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Pando, ēre, i, pansum, passum, 273, III.
 Pango, ēre, pāpīgi, pactum, 273.
 Pango, ēre, panxi, pēgi, pactum, pactum, 273.
 Pārco, ēre, pēperci (parsi), parsum, 273, I. 2.
 Pāreo, ēre, ui, itum, 265.
 Pārio, ēre, pēpēri, partum, 221; 273.
 Partior, i, itus sum, 288.
 Partūrio, ire, i, —, 284, 2.
 Pasco, ēre, pāvi, pastum, 276.
 Pāteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Pātor, i, passus sum, 229; 221; 283.
 Pāveo, ēre, pāvi, —, 270, II.
 Pecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Pel-licio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 221; 272, I. 2.
 Pello, ēre, pēpūli, pulsus, 273, I. 2.
 Pendeo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum, 270.
 Pendo, ēre, pēpendi, pensum, 273, I. 2.
 Per-cello. See *excello*, 274.
 Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Per-do, ēre, didi, ditum. See *abdo*, 273.
 Pergo (*for per-rigo*), ēre, perrexī, perrectum. See *rēgo*, 272.
 Per-pētor. See *pātor*, 283.
 Per-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Per-tūneo. See *tūneo*, 268.
 Pessum-do. See *do*, 261.
 Pōto, ēre, i, itum, 278, 2.
 Pīget, *impers.*, 299.
 Pingo, ēre, pinxi, pictum, 272, I.
 Pinso (piso), ēre, i, ui, pinsitum, pistum, pinsum, 273, III.
 Plaudo, ēre, si, sum, 272, II.
 Plecto, ēre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *amplector*, 283.
 Pleo, *obsolete*. See *compleo*, 264.
 Plīco, ēre, āvi, ui, ātum, itum, 260.
 Pluo, ēre, i or vi, —, 280.
 Polleo, ēre, —, 267.
 Polliceor, ēri, itus sum, 271.
 Pōno, ēre, pōsui, pōsitum, 275.
 Posco, ēre, pōposci, —, 273, I. 2.

Pos-sideo. See *sideo*, 270, II.
 Possum, posse, pōtui, —, 290.
 Pōtor, i, itus sum, 288.
 Pōto, ēre, āvi, ātum, um, 260, 1 and 2.
 Prae-cīno. See *cīno*, 273.
 Prae-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Prae-sideo. See *sideo*, 270, II.
 Prae-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Prandeo, ēre, i, pransum, 270, III.
 Prehendo, ēre, i, hensum, 273, III.
 Prōmo, ēre, pressi, pressum, 272, II.
 Prōd-igo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Prō-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Prōficiscor, i, prōfectus sum, 283.
 Prō-fīteor. See *fāteor*, 271.
 Prōmo, ēre, prompsi, promptum, 272, I.
 Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, 290, III.
 Prō-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Psallo, ēre, i, —, 280.
 Pūdet, *impers.*, 299.
 Puērasco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Pungo, ēre, pūpūgi, punctum, 273.

Q.

Quaero, ēre, quaesīvi, quaesitum, 278, 2.
 Quaeso, *def.*, 297.
 Quātio, ēre, quassi, quassum, 221; 272, II.
 Queo, ire, i, itum, 296.
 Quēror, i, questus sum, 283.
 Quiesco, ēre, quīēvi, quīētum, 277.

R.

Rādo, ēre, rāsi, rāsum, 272, II.
 Rāpio, ēre, rāpui, raptum, 221; 275.
 Raucio, ire, rausi, rausum, 286, II.
 Rē-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Rē-cīdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rē-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rē-crūdesco, ēre, crūdīvi, 282, II. 1.
 Rēd-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
 Red-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Rē-fello. See *fallo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rē-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Rēfert, *impers.*, 301.
 Rēgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, 209; 272.

Ră-linquo. See *linquo*, 273, II.
 Ră-mīniscor, i, —, 283.
 Ră-nīdeo, ăre, —, 267.
 Reor, rēri, rātus sum, 271.
 Ră-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Ră-parco. See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Ră-pērio, ăre, pēri, pertum, 287.
 Ră-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270, II.
 Ră-sīpio. See *sīpio*, 278.
 Ră-sōno. See *sōno*, 260.
 Re-spergo. See *spergo*, 272, II.
 Ră-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ră-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 268.
 Ră-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Ră-vivisco, ăre, vixi, victum, 283.
 Rīdeo, ăre, rīsi, rīsum, 269, I.
 Rīngor, i, —, 283.
 Rōdo, ăre, rōsi, rōsum, 272, II.
 Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
 Rūbeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Rūdo, ăre, iui, itum, 278, 2.
 Rumpo, ăre, rūpi, ruptum, 273, II.
 Ruo, ăre, rui, rūtum, rūtārus, 279.

S.

Săgio, ăre, —, 284, 2.
 Sălio, ăre, ui (ii), tum, 285.
 Salve, *def.*, 297.
 Sancio, ăre, sanxi, sanctum, sanc-tum, 286.
 Săpio, ăre, iui, ui, —, 221; 273.
 Sarcio, ăre, sarsi, sartum, 286.
 Săt-ăgo. See *ăgo*, 273, II.
 Scăbo, ăre, scăbi, —, 273, II.
 Scando, ăre, di, sum, 273, III.
 Scindo, ăre, scīdi, scissum, 273, III.
 Sciasco, ăre, scīvi, scitum, 282.
 Sēco, ăre, ui, tum, 260.
 Sēdeo, ăre, sēdi, sessum, 270, II.
 Sē-līgo. See *līgo*, 273, II.
 Sentio, ăre, sensi, sensum, 286.
 Sēpēlio, ăre, iui, sepultum, 284.
 Sēpio, ăre, psi, ptum, 286.
 Sēquor, i, sēcūtus sum, 228.
 Sēro, ăre, sēvi, sātum, 276.
 Sēro, ăre, serui, sertum, 274.
 Sīdo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Sīleo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Sīno, ăre, sīvi, sītum, 278.
 Sisto, ăre, stīti, stātum, 273.
 Stītio, ăre, iui, —, 284.

Sōleo, ăre, solītus sum, 271.
 Solvo, ăre, solvi, solūtum, 273, III.
 Sōno, ăre, ui, itum, 260.
 Sorbeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Sortior, iui, itus sum, 288.
 Spargo, ăre, sparsi, sparsum, 272, II.
 Spēcio, *obs.* See *aspēcio*, 272.
 Sperno, ăre, sprēvi, sprētum, 277.
 Splendeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Spondeo, ăre, spōpondi, sponsum, 270.
 Squāleo, ăre, —, 267.
 Stātuo, ăre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Sterno, ăre, strāvi, strātum, 276.
 Sternuo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Sterto, ăre, ui, —, 275.
 Stīnguo, ăre, —, 281.
 Sto, ăre, stēti, stātum, 261.
 Strēpo, ăre, ui, itum, 275.
 Strīdeo, ăre, strīdi, —, 270, III.
 Strīdo, ăre, i, —, 280.
 Struo, ăre, struxi, structum, 279, 1.
 Stūdeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Stūpeo, ăre, ui, —, 266.
 Suādeo, ăre, si, sum, 269, I.
 Sub-do, ăre, dīdi, dītum. See *abdo*, 273, I. 1.

Sūb-īgo. See *ăgo*, 273, II.
 Sub-sīlio. See *sīlio*, 285.
 Suc-cēdo. See *cēdo*, 272, II.
 Suc-cendo. See *accendo*, 273, III.
 Suc-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Suc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cresco. See *cresco*, 277.
 Suesco, ăre, suēvi, suētum, 277.
 Suf-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Suf-fīcio. See *fīcio*, 273, II.
 Suf-fōdio. See *fōdio*, 273, II.
 Sug-gēro. See *gēro*, 272.
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.
 Sūmo, ăre, psi, ptum, 272.
 Sūperbio, ăre, —, 284, 2.
 Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 275, I.
 Surgo (*for* sur-rīgo), ăre, surrexi, surrectum. See *rēgo*, 272, I.

T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
 Tango, ăre, tētīgi, tactum, 273.
 Temno, ăre, —, 281.

Tendo, ěre, tētendi, tentum, tensum,
273, I. 2.

Tēneo, ěre, ui, tum, 268.

Tēpesco, ěre, tēpui, —, 282.

Tergeo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 269, I.

Tergo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 272, II.

Těro, ěre, trīvi, tritum, 278.

Texo, ěre, ui, tum, 275.

Timeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.

Tollo, ěre, sustūli, sublātum, 273.

Tondeo, ěre, tōtondi, tonsum, 270.

Tōno, ěre, ui, (itum), 260.

Torpeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.

Torqueo, ěre, torsi, tortum, 269, II.

Torreo, ěre, torrui, tostum, 268.

Trā-do. See *abdo*, 273.

Traho, ěre, traxi, tractum, 272.

Trěmo, ěre, ui, —, 274.

Tribo, ěre, ui, ūtum, 279.

Trūdo, ěre, trūsi, trūsum, 272, II.

Tueor, ěri, tuŭtus sum, 271.

Tundo, ěre, tūtūdi, tunsum, tūsum,
273, I. 2.

Tuor, for *tueor*, 283.

Turgeo, ěre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.

Tussio, ěre, —, 284, 2.

U.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 283.

Urgeo, ěre, ursi, —, 269, I.

Uro, ěre, ussi, ustum, 272.

Utor, i, ūsus sum, 283.

V.

Vādo, ěre, —, 281.

Vāgio, ěre, iui, —, 284.

Veho, ěre, vexi, vectum, 272.

Vello, ěre, velli (*vulsi*), vulsum, 273,
III.

Vendo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, 273.

Vēn-eo. See *eo*, 295.

Vēnio, ěre, vēni, ventum, 287.

Vēnum-do. See *do*, 261.

Věreo, ěri, verītus sum, 227; 271.

Vergo, ěre, —, 281.

Verro, ěre, verri, versum, 273, III.

Verto, ěre, ti, sum, 273, III.

Vertor. See *dēvertor*, 273, III.

Vescor, i, —, 288.

Vespērascit, *impers.*, 300.

Větārasco, ěre, rāvi, —, 276.

Věto, ěre, ui, itum, 260.

Vīdeo, ěre, vīdi, vīsum, 270, II.

Vieo, ěre, —, ētum, 264, 2.

Vīlesco, ěre, vīlui, —, 282, II. 1.

Vīncio, ěre, vīnxi, vīctum, 286.

Vīnco, ěre, vīci, vīctum, 273, II.

Vīreo, ěre, ui, —, 286.

Vīresco, ěre, vīrui, —, 282.

Vīso, ěre, i, um, 273, III.

Vīvo, ěre, vixi, vīctum, 272.

Vōlo, velle, vōlui, —, 293.

Volvo, ěre, volvi, vōlūtum, 273, III.

Vōmo, ěre, ui, itum, 274.

Vōveo, ěre, vōvi, vōtum, 270, II.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction; *w.* = with; *f.* = and the following; *compds.* = compounds; *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative; *acca.* = accusatives; *loc.* or *locat.* = locative; *adjs.* = adjectives; *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly, the numerous exceptions in Dec. III., and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 53-115.

- A** SOUND of, 6 ff., 15. Nouns
in *a*,—of 1st dec., 48; of 3d
dec., 55; genitive of, 69; gen-
der, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320,
6. *A*, in acc. sing., 68; changed
in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity
of,—final, 615; in increments of
dec., 633; of conj., 640.
A, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 338, 2; in
compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A*, *ab*,
abs, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388,
in personification, 414, 6.
Abbreviations, 719.
Abhinc, 427.
Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec.,
48, 49; in 2d dec. 51, 52; in 3d
dec. 57 ff., 62 ff.; in 4th dec.,
117; in adjs., 148 ff.
Ablative, syntax of, 412-437. Of
cause, manner, means, 414;
agent, accompaniment, 414, 5
and 7. Of price, 416. W. com-
paratives, 417. Of differ., 418.
In special constrs., 419; 385, 5;
386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of
place, 420 ff. Of source, 425.
Of time, 426. Of charac., 428.
Of specification, 429. Abl. ab-
sol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6.
W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds,
etc., 566. Of supine, 570.
Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infini-
tive or clause, 431, 4.
Abque, w. abl., 434.
Abstineo, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2;
w. gen., 409, 4.
Abstract nouns, 39; from adjs.,
319; from verbs, 321, 3.
Abunde, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
-abus, for *is*, in 1st dec., 49.
Ac, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w.
subj., 503, 506.
Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Accedit, constr., 556, II. 1.
Accentuation, 24 ff.
Accidit, constr., 556, II.
Accingo, constr., 374, 7.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of,
558, IV.
Accusative, formation of,—in 3d
dec., 57 ff.; in adjectives, 148 ff.
Accusative, syntax of, 370-381.—
Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate,
371, 1, 3); w. other cases, 371,
2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal
adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two
accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for,
374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4;
poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of in-
fin., 375. Agreement, 376. Ad-
verbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time
and space, 378. Of limit, 379,
poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of speci-
fication, 380. In exclam., 381.
W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds
and gerundives, 565. Of supine,
569.
Accusing and acquitting, constr. of
verbs of, 410.
Acephalous verse, 663, III.
-acens, adjs. in, 324.

- Acquiesco*, 386, 2.
 Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
Ad, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *Ad*, w. acc., 433.
 -ades, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
Adhuc locorum, 396, 2, 4) (4).
Adipiscor, w. gen., 409, 3.
 Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
Admisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Admoneo, constr., 410, 3.
 Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Adolescens, compared, 168, 4.
 Adonic verse, 677, III.
Adulor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
 Advantage, dat. of, 385.
 Adverbial acc., 377.
 Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 3. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
 Adversative conjs., 310; 587, III.
 Adversative sentence, 360.
Adversus, w. accus., 433.
 Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
Ae, sound of, 9, 16; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
Aedes, sing. and plur., 132.
Aeger, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aemulus, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
Aeneas, decl. of, 50.
Aequi boni facere, 402, 3.
Aër, *aether*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
 -aens, adjs. in, 326.
Affatim, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Afficio, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
Affinis, w. gen., 399, (3).
 Age, expression of, 417, 3.
 Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 2; Dat. of, 388.
 Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gen. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
 -ai, for *ae*, 49, 2; quant. of, 612, 1.
 -al, nouns in, 63.
 Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
Alieno, w. dat. 425, 2.
Alienus, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
Aliquantus, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
 -alis, adjs. in, 325.
Alius,—Decl. 151. W. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius—alius*, 459; *alius—alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
 Alphabet, 2 ff.
Alter,—Decl. 151. Indef., 191, 2; *alteruter*, 151, 4; *alter—alter*, 459; *alter—alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Altercor, w. dat., 385, 5.
Alvus, gender of, 53.
Ambi, *amb.*, 338, 3.
Ambo, decl. of, 175, 2.
 Amphora, 716.
Amplius without *quam*, 417, 3.
An, *annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).
An=aut, 526, 2, 3).
 Anacoluthon, 704, III. 4.
 Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff. —Tense-signs, 242 ff.; mood-signs, 244 ff.; personal endings, 247.
 Anapaestic verse, 678.
 Anaphora, 704, II. 3.
 Anastrophe, 704, IV. 1.

- Animi*, constr., 399, 3, 4).
 Answers, 346, 3.
Ante, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.
 Antecedent, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.
Antequam, w. indic. or subj., 523.
 Antimeria, 704, III. 1.
 Antithesis, 703, 8.
-anus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Anxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
 Aphaeresis, 703, 1.
 Apocope, 703, 3.
 Aposiopesis, 704, I. 3.
 Appendix, 702-720.
 Appositive,—Agreement of, 363; in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.
Aptus, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Apud, w. accus., 433.
-ar, nouns in, 63.
Arceo, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Archilochian verse, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.
Arenae, locat. of place, 424, 3.
-aris, adjs. in, 325.
 Aristophanic, 691, III.
-arium, nouns in, 317.
-arius, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.
 Arrangement,—Of Words, 592-602.
 —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words,—Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606,—Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.
 Arsis and Thesis, 660.
As and its divisions, 712.
-as, nouns in, 1st dec., 50; 3d dec., 79; gen. of, 105.
-as, for *ae* in gen., 49; in Greek acc. plur., 68; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.
 Asclepiadéan verse, 689, III.; greater, IV.
-asco, inceptives in, 332, II.
 Asking, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Aspergo, constr., 384, 1.
 Aspirated letters, 4, 3.
-asso, *assim*, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.
Assuesco, w. abl. 386, 2.
 Asyndeton, 704, I. 1.
-atim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
Atque, for *quam*, 417, 4.
 Attraction, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.
 Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-atus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Au, 9, 16; changed, 341, 3.
Audio, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).
Audiens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Aureus, the coin, 712.
Autem, place of, 602, III.
 Authority, long or short by, 609, 2.
 Authors, Latin, 706.
Avidus, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.
-ax, genit. of nouns in, 92; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.
- B**, CHANGED to *p*, 258.
 Being angry, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Being distant, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
 Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Belli, constr., 424, 2.
Bene, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.
 Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bibi, quantity of, 651, 2.
-bilia, verbals in, 328.
Bonus, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.
Bos, decl. of, 66.
 Brachycatalectic, 663, III.
 Brazen age, 706, III.
-brum, nouns in, 320.
-bs, genit. of nouns in, 86.
 Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.
-bulum, nouns in, 320.
-bundus, verbals in, 328; w. acc., 371, 7.

C, SOUND of, 17 ff. Nouns in, 74; *gend.*, 111.
C, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Caelum, plur. *caeli*, 143, 1.
Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.
Calendar, Roman, 707.
Calends, 708, I. 1.
Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Caput, decl. of, 58; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.
Carbasus, *gend.* of, 53.
Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.
Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 46, 1; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d dec., 51, 2; in 3d dec., 57 ff.; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 120; general endings, 122. Greek cases, 50, 54, 68. Cases of adjs., 151–158.
Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.
Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Causa, *gratia*, 414, 2, 3).
Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.
Causal sentences, 360.
Cause, abl. of, 414.
Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, 520; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 522; *antequam*, *priusquam*, 523.
Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.
Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
Cave, w. subj. for imperat., 535, I.
Caveo, constr., 385, 3.
-ce, in pronouns, 186.
Celo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
-cen, compounds in, 339, 2.
Certo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Certus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Ch, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.
Changes, euphonic, 26 ff.; in vowels, 27 ff.; in consonants, 33 ff.; in stems, 258.
Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.

Choliambus, 683, 4.
Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Choriambic verse, 689 ff.
Cingo, constr. of, 374, 7.
-cio, derivatives in, 315, 5.
Circa, *circiter*, w. acc., 433.
Circum, in compds., 338, 2; compds., w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circundo*, *circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 438.
Cis, *citra*, w. acc., 438.
Citerior, compared, 166.
Cytum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Clam, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
Clauses, as nouns, *gend.* of, 42. Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.
Cognate accus., 371, 1.
Coins, Roman, 712.
-cola, compounds in, 339, 2.
Collective nouns, 39.
Colus, *gend.* of, 53.
Com, *con* for *cum*, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386.
Combined objects, 354, 3.
Comitor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.
Common nouns, 39; com. quantity, 23.
Commoneo, *commonefacio*, constr., 410, 3.
Communis, constr., 391, 2, 4; 399, 3.
Commuto, constr. of, 416, 2.
Comparative conj., 311; 588, II.
Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.
Comparative view, of decl., 123; of conjugation, 240 ff.
Comparison,—of adjs., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.;

- adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.
- Compleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.
- Compos*, 157, 2; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
- Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.
- Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 214; comp. adverbs, 342. Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Com. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1-3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6.
- Computation of money, 713.
- Con*, see *com*.
- Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Concedo*, constr., 551, II. 2.
- Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.
- Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588 IV.
- Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.
- Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513; in oratio obliqua, 532, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.
- Conditional sentences, 502 ff.
- Confido*, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.
- Conjugation, 200 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 259 ff.; second, 207 ff., 264 ff.; third, 209 ff., 272 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 284 ff.; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 221. Periphrastic, 231 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 240. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 289 ff.; of defect, 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.
- Conjunctions, 303; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.
- Conscius*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.
- Conscius mihi sum*, constr., 551, 3.
- Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 17. Changes in, 33 ff.
- Conscors*, w. gen., 399 (3).
- Constituo*, constr., 558, II.
- Consuesco*, w. abl., 386, 2.
- Consuetudo*, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.
- Consulo*, constr., 385, 3.
- Consultus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Contentus*, w. abl., 419, IV.
- Continental pronunciation, 19.
- Contingit*, constr., 556, II.
- Contra*, w. accus., 433.
- Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.
- Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.
- Contrarius*, constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Coördinate conjunctions, 309.
- Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587.
- Copul. sentences, 360.
- Coram*, w. abl., 434.
- Countries, gender of names of, 42.
- crum*, nouns in, 320.
- Cuicuiusmodi*, 187, 6.
- Cujas*, 185, 3.
- Cujus*, 185, 3; *cujusmodi*, *cujus-cumquemodi*, 187, 6.
- culum*, nouns in, 320.
- culus*, *cula*, *culum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
- Cum*, appended, 184, 9; 187, 3; *cum*, *com*, in compds., 338, 2.
- Cum*, w. abl., 434.
- cundus*, verbals in, 328.
- Cuncti*, *omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
- Cupidus*, w. gen., 399, 2.
- Cupiens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- Cupio*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

D, DROPPED before *s*, 36; quantity of final syllables in, 621. Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylico-iambic, 693.

- Dama*, *gend.* of, 48, 5.
Damni infecti, w. verbs of promising, 409, 5.
 Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.
 Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 49, 4; in 3d dec., 58, 2; in 4th dec., 117; in 5th dec., 120.
 Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and disadvantage, 385. W. compds., 386. Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390. W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv., 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W. verbs of Separ., 425, 2, 3).
Datum, quantity of, 651, 3.
De, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De* w. abl., 434.
Decerno, constr., 558, II.
Decipio, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.
 Declarative sentence, 346.
 Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
 Declension, 46; first, 48; second, 51; third, 55; fourth, 116; second and fourth, 119; fifth, 120. Comparative view of decl., 123.
 Decl. of compds., 126.
Dēli, quantity of, 651, 2.
Dedoco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
 Defective nouns, 120, 4; 129; def. adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166; def. verbs, 297.
 Deliberative questions, w. the subj., 486, II.
 Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
 Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.
Denarius, 712.
 Dentals, 3.
 Deponent verbs, 225; 465, 2.
 Derivation, 318; of nouns, 314 ff.; of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 330 ff.; of adverbs, 333 ff.
 Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quantity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.
 Desideratives, 382, III.
Desino, w. gen., 409, 4.
 Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in asseverations, 488, 4; in relat. clauses, 488, 5.
 Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Desisto, w. gen., 409, 4.
Despero, w. acc., 371, 3.
Deterior, compared, 166.
Deterreo, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Deus, 51, 5.
 Diaeresis, 669, III.
Diana, quantity of, 612, 3.
 Diastole, 669, IV.
Dic for *dice*, 237.
 -dicus, compds. in compared, 164.
Dido, 68.
 Difference, abl. of, 418.
 Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.
Differo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dignor, constr., 419, 2.
Dignus, constr., 419; *dignus*, *qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
 Dimeter, 668, 2.
 Diminutive nouns, 315; dim. adjs., 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9, 16; quantity of, 610.
 Dipody, 666, 2.
 Direct object, 354, 1; 371.
Dis, *di*, 338, 3.
 Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.
Discrepo, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sentences, 360.
Dispar, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Dissentio, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dissimilis, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quantity of, 651.
 Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.
 Distich, 666.
Disto, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of, 179.
Div, compared, 305, 4.
Dius, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diversus, compared, 167.
Dives, compared, 165, 2.
Doceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Doleo, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
Domus, decl. of, 119; *gend.*, 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Donec, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Dono, constr., 384, 1.
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.
 Double consonants, 3.
Duc for *duce*, 237.
Dum, *dummodo*, w. subj., 508 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.
Duo, decl. of, 175.

E, SOUND of, 6, 15. Nouns in
e,—1st dec., 50; 3d dec., 63;
gend., 111. *E* in Greek acc. plur.,
68, 6; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 120,
3; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed
to *i*, 341, 3.

E, quantity of—in *ei*, 120, 2; final,
616; in increments of decl., 635;
of conjugation, 641.

E or *ez*, see *ez*.

Ecce with demonstratives, 186, 4; in
exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

Equis, 188, 3. *Equid*, 346, II. 2.

Edoceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.

Egenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3);
419, III.

Egeo, constr., 409, 1.

Ego, decl. of, 184.

Eheu, quantity of, 612, 2.

Ei, 9, 16. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.

-*eis*, in patronymics, 316.

-*eius*, quantity of, 612, 2.

Ejusmodi, 186, 5.

-*ela*, nouns in, 320, 7.

Elegiac distich, 676, 2.

Elegiambus, 693, 1.

Elements of sentences, 347 ff.

Ellipsis, 704; of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3;
602, II. 3.

-*ellus*, *ella*, *ellum*, nouns in, 315;
adjs. in, 327, 1.

Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551;
558, V.

Emphasis and euphony in the ar-
rangement of words, 594.

-*en*, nouns in, 76; *en* in Greek acc.,
50, 68; with demonstratives, 186,
4; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

Enallage, 704, III.

Enclitics, accent of, 25, 3; quantity
of, 613, 1.

Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of,
558, III.

Endings, 46; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d
dec., 51, 2; in 3d dec., 57 ff; in
4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 120;
in comparison, 162; in conjuga-
tion, 241 ff.

English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.

Enim, place of, 602, III.

-*ensis*, adjs. in, 325 ff.

-*entior*, *entissimus*, in compari-
son, 164.

Envyng, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Eo, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).

Epenthesis, 703, 5.

Epicene nouns, 43, 3.

Epichoriambic verse, 690.

Epiphora, 704, II. 4.

Epitome, dec. of, 50.

Epulum, plur., *epulae*, 143.

-*er*, gend. of nouns in, 51, 99. Adjs.
in, 153; comparison of, 163, 1.
Adverbs in, 385.

-*ere*, for *erunt*, 235.

Erga, w. acc., 433.

Ergo, w. gen., 411.

-*es*, nouns in, 58, 64, 120; genitive
of, 80, 81; gender of, 104, 109, 120.

-*es*, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity
of, 624.

-*esco*, inceptives in, 332, II.

-*esso*, *essim*, in fut., perf., and perf.
subj., 239, 4; *esso*, verbs in, 232.

-*ester*, adjs. in, 325, 1.

-*etas*, nouns in, 319, 1.

Ethical dative, 389.

Etiamsi, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.

-*etum*, nouns in, 317.

Etymology, 37–342.

Eu, sound of, 9.

Euphonic changes, 26 ff.; in vowels,
27 ff.; in consonants, 33 ff.; be-
fore *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 258; in prep-
ositions, 338, 2.

Euphony, see *Emphasis*.

-*eus*, adjs. in, 324, 326.

Evenit, constr., 556, II.

-*ex*, genit. of nouns in, 93.

Ex, *e*, in compds. w. dat. 386, 2. *Ez*,
w. abl., 434.

Exchanging, constr. of verbs of,
416, 2.

Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.;
accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat.
in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.

Exoro, constr., 374, 2.

Expers, *exors*, w. gen., 399, (3).

Exterus, compared, 163, 3.

Extra, w. acc., 433.

Extremum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

Exuo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.

FAC, for *face*, 237.

Facio, w. pred. gen., 403.

Facio ut, w. subj. = indic., 489, 1.

Falsum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

Falsus, compared, 167.

Flames, abl. *flamæ*, 137, 2.
Familia, genitive of, 49, 1.
 Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.
 Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
 Feet, metrical, 656 ff.
 Feminine, 42.
Fer, for *fere*, 237.
Fertilis, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, 2, (3) and 5.
-fex, compds. in, 339, 2.
-ficus, adjs. in, compared, 164.
Fido, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.
 Figures,—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.
 Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
 Final conj., 311; 588, V.
 Final syllables, quantity of, 618 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.
 Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.
Fio, quantity of, 612, 3.
Fil, constr., 556, II.
Flagito, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Foci, locat. of place, 424, 3.
 Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
 Formation,—of cases, 46; of parts of verbs, 201 ff.; of words, 313–342.
 Fractions, 174, 1.
 Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
Frenum, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.
 Frequentatives, 332.
Fretus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Frugi, indecl., 159; compared, 165.
Fruor, constr., 419.
Fungor, constr., 419.
Furor, w. dat., 425, 2.
 Future, 197; 215, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.
 Future Perfect, 197; 215, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.

Futurum esse, *fuisse*, *fore*, *ut*, 544, 1–3.
Futurum sit ut, 481, III. 1 and 2.
G, SOUND of, 11 ff., 17; changed, **G**, 258.
Gaudeo, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.
Gemo, w. accus., 371, 3.
 Gems, gender of names of, 53.
 Gender, 42 ff.; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d dec., 51, 53; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 121; general table of, 124.
 Genitive, endings of, 47; in 1st dec., 48; as for *ae*, *um* for *arum*, 49; in 2d dec., 51; *i* for *is*, *um* for *orum*, 52; *o* or *on*, 54; in 3d dec., 69–98; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 117; in 5th dec., 120; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 120, 3. In adjectives, 151–158.
 Genitive, how rendered, 393, 393, 1.
 Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.
Genitus, w. abl., 425, 3.
 Gentile nouns, 326, 3.
 Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W. direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *frutor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.
Glorior, w. abl., 414, 2.
Gloriosum est, 556, I. 2.
 Glyconic verse, 664, 689.
Gnarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
 Golden age, 706.

Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 50; in 2d dec., 54; in 3d dec., 68.
Gutturals, 3.

H A BREATHING, 2.

H, *Hadria*, gender of, 48, 5.
Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.

Haud, ne, non, 584.

Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.

Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.

Hepthemimeris, 656, 2.

Heroic verse, 664.

Heros, decl. of, 68.

Heteroclitics, 135 ff.

Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.

Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.

Hic, iste, ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Hic and ille, redundant, 450, 4, 2).

Hic (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hippocratican, 683, 4.

Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.

Hódie, quantity of, 654, 8.

Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.

Horreo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Huc, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hujusmodi, 186, 5.

Humus, gender of, 53; constr. of *humit*, 424, 2.

Hypallage, 704, III. 2.

Hyperbaton, 704, IV.

Hyperbole, 705, V.

Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.

Hypermeter, 663, III.

Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.

Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

I SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 15; with the sound of *y*, 7, 4, 4); 15, 3; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 52. Nouns in, 71; gender of, 111; *i*, final in abl., 62 ff.; for *ei*, 120, 3; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643.

-**ia**, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 63.

-**iacus**, adjs. in, 326.

-**iades**, in patronymics, 316.

Iambelegus, 694, 1.

Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Tri-meter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.

Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.

-**ianus**, adjs. in, 326.

-**ias**, in patronymics, 316.

-**ibam**, for *iebam*, 239, 1.

-**ibo**, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.

-**icius**, adjs. in, 324.

Ictus, 659.

-**icus**, adjs. in, 325 ff.

Idem, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem—qui, ac or atque*, 451, 5.

Ides, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.

-**ides**, in patronymics, 316.

-**ido**, nouns in, 320, 7.

Idoneus qui, w. subj., 501, III.

-**idus**, verbals in, 328.

-**iensis**, adjs. in, 326.

-**ier**, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.

Ignarus, place in the clause, 602, III.

Ignarus, w. gen., 399, (2).

-**igo**, nouns in, 320, 7.

-**ile**, nouns in, 317.

-**ilis**, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.

Illative conjs., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.

Ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Illic for *ille*, 186, 3.

-**illo**, verbs in, 332, IV.

-**illus**, *illa*, *illum*, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327, 1.

-**im**, in acc. 62; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.

Immemor, w. gen., 399, 2.

-**imonia**, nouns in, 319.

Impedio, constr., 499, 1, 2.

Imperative, 196. Tenses, 584. Use, 535, ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.

Imperative sentences, 346, III.

Imperfect tense, 197; 215, I.; w. *jamdiu*, etc. 467, 2. In indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present

- time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
- Imperitus*, w. gen. 399, (2).
- Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.—III.
- Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.
- Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Impos*, 157, 2; w. gen., 399, (3).
- Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- in*, in Greek accs., 68.
- In*, in compds., 388, 2; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- In loco*, or *in numero*, w. genit., 362, 2, (3).
- Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
- Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
- Inclutus*, compared, 167.
- Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
- Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 42; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
- Indefinite moods, 196.
- Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
- Index of verbs, 721.
- Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
- Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.
- Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV.; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
- Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.
- Indirect object, 354, 2. Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.
- Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
- Induco*, constr., 374, 7.
- Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- ine*, in patronymics, 316, 5.
- ineus*, adja. in, 324.
- Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, A.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
- Infra*, w. acc., 433.
- Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.
- Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Initor*, constr., 419.
- Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
- Inscius*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
- Insperso*, constr., 384, 1.
- Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
- Insueto*, w. abl., 386, 2.
- Insuper*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
- Insuper*, w. acc., 437, 3.
- Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Inter*, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.
- Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.
- Interior*, compared, 166.
- Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 589 ff.
- Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
- Interrogative sentences.—Form, 346, II. Interrog., words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber. quest., 486, II. Answers, 346, II. 3. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical quest., 530, 2.
- Interrogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2, 3.
- Intra*, w. accus., 433.
- Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.
- inus*, adjs. in, 324 ff.
- Invidus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, (2).

Invitus, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
-io, verbs of 3d conj. in, 221 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.
 Ionic verse, 687.
-ior, in comparatives, 162.
Ipsæ, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.
Ipsus, for *ipse*, 186, 4.
 Iron age, 706.
 Irony, 705, IV.; in condition, 503, 3.
 Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.
 Irregular principal parts of verbs, 259-288; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.
Is, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 448; redundant, 450, 4.
Is—qui, 451, 4.
-is, in acc., dat., and abl. plur., of 3d decl., 58, 2; 62. Nouns in *is*, 82; gender of, 105.
-is, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.
-isco, inceptives in, 332, II.
 Islands, gen. of names of, 42; constr. of names of, 424.
-issimus, in superlatives, 162.
-isso, verbs in, 332.
Iste, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Istic, isthic, for *iste*, 186, 2.
Ita—si, only if, 503, 4.
-itas, nouns in, 319.
-iter, adverbs in, 335.
 Ithyphalicus, 681, 2.
-itia, nouns in, 319.
-itimus, adjs. in, 325, 1.
-itium, nouns in, 318.
-ito, frequentatives in, 332.
-itudo, nouns in, 319.
Itum, quantity of, 651, 3.
-itus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323; adverbs in, 334, 2.
-ium, in genit. plur., 62 ff.; nouns in, 318 ff.
-ius, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.
-ix, genitive of nouns in, 94.

J, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-ens preceding vowel, 611.
Jecur, genitive of, 77, IV.
Jocus, pl., *joci, joca*, 141.
Jobeo, constr., 551, II., 1 and 2.
Jugerum, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.
Jugum, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.

Jungo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Jupiter, genitive of, 66, 3.
Jurjurandum, decl. of, 126.
 Juvenal, versification of, 696.
Juvenalis, abl. of, 62, IV. 1.
Juvenis, abl. of, 62, IV. 1; compared, 168, 3.
Juvo, w. accus., 385, 1.
Juxta, w. accus., 433.

K, RARE, 2.
 Knowing, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.

L, NOUNS in, 63; genit. of, 75; gender, 111 ff.; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Labials, 3.
Laboro, w. abl., 414, 2.
Lacrimo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Leado, w. accus., 385, 1.
Lar, quantity of genit., 633, 4.
Lassus, w. gen., 399, 3.
 Latin authors, 706.
 Latin grammar, 1.
 Latin period, 605.
-lentus, adjs. in, 323.
 Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 6 ff.
Libero, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.
Libra, 714.
Licet, w. subj., 515.
 Liquids, 3.
 Litotes, 705, VI.
Litum, quantity of, 651, 3.
 Locative, 45, 2; in 1st decl., 48, 4; in 2d decl., 51, 6; in 3d decl., 62, IV. 3. Syntax of, 421 ff.
 Logaoedic verse, 691.
Longius, without *quam*, 417, 3.
-ls, genit. of nouns in, 89.

M, EUPHONIC changes of, 358, 338, 2; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.
-ma, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 55, 2.
Magis, maxime, in adverbial comparison, 170.
Magnus, compared, 165.
Major, in expressions of age, 417, 3.
 Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. subj., 558, IV.
Malo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

Malus, compared, 165.
Manifestus, w. gen., 399, 3.
 Manner, means, abl. of, 414; participle for, 578, II.
 Masculine, 42.
 Material nouns, 39, 1.
 Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.
Med, for *me*, 184, 8.
Medeor, w. dat., 385, 2.
Medius, designating part, 441, 6.
Melius, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.
Melos, plur. of, 68, 6.
Meme, 184, 7.
Memini, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.
Memor, w. gen., 399, 2).
-men, mentum, nouns in, 320.
Mensa, decl. of, 48.
Mepte, 184, 8.
-met, forms in, 184, 6; 185, 2.
 Metaphor, 705, I.
 Metathesis, 703, 7.
 Metonymy, 705, II.
 Metre, 667.
 Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.
Metuo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
Meus, decl., 185.
Mi for *mihi*, 184, 8.
Militia, constr., 424, 2.
Mille, decl. and use of, 174, 4; 178.
 Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.
 Million sesterces, Latin for, 713, 4.
-mino, in imperatives, 239, 5.
Minor, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Miror, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4.
Mirum est, constr. of, 556, I. 2.
Mis for *mei*, 184, 8.
Misceo, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.
Misereor, *misereco*, w. gen., 406.
Miseret, constr., 410. *Miserescit*, *miseretur*, 410, 6.
Moderor, constr., 385, 3.
 Modifier, 348 ff.
Modius, 715.
Modo, w. subj., 503, 505.
Moereo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Moneo, constr., 410, 3.
 Money, Roman, 712 ff.
 Monometer, 663, 2.

Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.
 Months, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 42.
 Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483-533. Imperat., 534 ff. Inf., 539-553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.
 Mood-signs, 244 ff.
Mos, moris est, constr., 556, I. 1.
-ms, gen. of nouns in, 87.
 Multiplicatives, 173.
Multus, comparison of, 165.
 Mutes, 3.
Muto, constr., 416, 2.

N, NOUNS in, 60; genit. of, 76; gend. of, 111, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.
 Names of towns, constr., 423.
Natus, w. abl., 425, 3.
Nē, num, nonne, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.
Nē, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.
Nē, non, haud, 584. *Neve*, 490, 1.
Necne, 346, II. 2, 3; 526, 2, 1).
Nedum, w. subj., 493, 4.
 Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.
Nemo, 72; use of, 457, 1.
Nequam, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.
Nē—quidem, 585; 602, III. 2.
Nescio an, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).
Nescio quis, quomodo, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.
Nescius, w. gen., 399, (2).
-neus, adjs. in, 324.
Neuter, decl. of, 151.
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 46, 2; neuter by signification, 42; by ending, in 2d dec., 51, 53; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 116.
Ni, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.

Nimis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Nisi, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nisi and *si non*, meaning, 508, 3.
Nitor, constr., 419.
Niz, 66.
Nolo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*, -ilo, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).
Nomen est, constr., 387, 1.
Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.
Non, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non*, 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.
Non, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.
Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.
Nonne, *non* = *noune*, 346, II. 1.
Nos, for *ego*, 446, 2.
Noster, for *meus*, 446, 2.
Nostras, 185, 3.
Nostrī, *nostrum*, 396, 1; 446, 3.
Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 42 ff.; pers. and numb., 44; cases, 45; declensions, 48–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclitics, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.
Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.
Novus, compared, 167.
Noxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
-na, genit. of nouns in, 90.
Nubo, w. dat., 385, 2.
Nullus, decl. of, 151; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.
Num, *numquid*, 346, II. 1 and 2.
Number, 44; in verbs, 199.
Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.
-nus, adjectives in, 324.
Nusquam, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

O, SOUND of, 6 ff., 15; nouns in, 60, 72; genit., 99, 100; derivatives in, 320, 6; 331.
O, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compds., 654, 7.
Ob, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.

Obediens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 386.
Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, 371; omit, 371, 1, (3); clause as an object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See *Subject and object clauses*.
Objective genitive, 396, II.
Oblique cases, 45, 1; use of, 370–437.
Obliviscor, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.
Obstato, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Ociō, compared, 166.
Oē, sound of, 9, 16.
Officio, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Ohe, quantity, 612, 4.
-olentus, adjectives in, 323.
Oleo and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.
Ollus, for *ille*, 186, 4.
-olus, *ola*, *olum*, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327, 1.
Omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
-on, in Greek gen. plur., 68, 4.
-one, in patronymics, 316, 5.
Operam do, w. subj., 492, 1.
Optimum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Opus, constr., 419.
-or, gender of nouns in, 99, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.
Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.
Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of, 179.
Oro, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.
Orpheus, 68.
Orthography, 2–36.
Ortus, w. abl., 426, 3.
-os, nouns in, 61; genit. of, 83; genit., 99, 102.
-os, for *is* in the genitive, 63.
-os final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.
-osus, adjs. in, 323.
Ovid, versification of, 697.
-ox, genit. of nouns in, 95.

PALAM, w. abl., 437, 2.
Panithus, voc. of, 54, 4.
Par and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Paragoge, 703, 6.
Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Paremiac verse, 664.

- Pars*, in fractions, 174, 1.
Particeps, genit. of, 158, 2; w. gen., 399, (3).
 Participles, 196, II. 4; as predicate adjs. w. *sum*, 575, 1. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause, —time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.
 Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.
 Particles, syntax of, 582–590.—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.
Partim, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim*—*partim*, for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.
 Partitive genitive, 396, III.
 Partitive appositive, 363, 4.
 Parts of speech, 38.
Parum, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Parvus, compared, 165.
 Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.
Paterfamilias, decl. of, 126.
Patrior, constr., 551, II. 1, 2.
Patrials, 326, 2.
 Patronymics, 316.
 Pause, caesural, 662.
 Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.
Pelagus, plur. and gen. of, 53, 54, 4.
Penes, w. accus., 433.
 Pentameter, 663, 2.
 Penthemimeris, 656, 2.
 Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.
Per, in compds., 338, 2; 371, 4; *per*, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.
 Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Percontor, w. two accs., 374, 2.
 Perfect, 197; 215, 2; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 267, 281, 284, 2.
 Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3; w. *postquam*, *ut*, *ut primum*, 471, 4. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.
 Perfect system, 215, 2.
 Perfect stem, formation of, 252 ff.
 Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.
 Periphrastic conjugation, 231 ff.
Peritus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Permisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Permitto, constr., 551, II. 2.
 Person, of nouns, 44; of verbs, 199.
 Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.
 Personal endings, 247; in perfect, 247, 2; in imperative, 247, 3.
 Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Pertaedet, *pertaesum est*, 410, 6.
Peto, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Ph, 4.
 Phalaecian verse, 691, V.
 Pherecratean verse, 689, II.
Piget, constr., 410.
 Place, abl. of, 421 ff.; locative, 421 ff.
 Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.
Plenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
 Pleonasm, 704, II.
 Pluperfect, 197; 215, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.
 Plural, 44; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.
Plus, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Paenitet, constr., 410.
 Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.
Pone, w. accus., 433.
Posco, w. two accs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
 Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
 Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
 Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and

- interest*, 408, 1, 2); use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
- Possessor, dat. of, 387.
- Post*, sound of, 8, 1.
- Post*, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
- Posterus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Postremus*, force of, 442.
- Postridie*, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
- Postulo*, constr., 374, 3, 4).
- Potens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
- Potior*, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
- Prae*, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
- Praeditus*, w. abl., 419, 3.
- Praeter*, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *praeter*, w. accus., 433.
- Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
- Prepositions, 306; insep., 307; in compds., 338, 2. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2, and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
- Present, 197; 215, I.,—in indic., 466 ff.; w. *jamdiu*, etc., 467, 2; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
- Present perfect, 471, I.
- Present stem, formation of, 250 ff.
- Present system of forms, 215, I.
- Priapeian verse, 695.
- Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
- Pridie*, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
- Primitives and derivatives, 313.
- Principal parts of verbs, 213 ff.; 259–288. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
- Prior*, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, I.
- Priusquam*, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
- Pro*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defense of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
- Pro*, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
- Procul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Prohibeo*, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.
- Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; pos-
ses., 185; demon., 186; relat.,
187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
- Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—
Agreement, 445. Pers. and Pos-
ses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448
ff. Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453.
Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.
- Pronunciation of Latin, 5–25.
- Prope*, w. accus., 433.
- Proper nouns, 39.
- Proptor*, *proximus*, 166; w. accus.,
391, 2, 2); 433.
- Propius*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proprius*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
- Propter*, w. accus., 433.
- Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–
654. Versification, 655–701.
- Prospicio*, constr., 385, 3.
- Prosthesis, 703, 4.
- Provideo*, constr., 385, 3.
- Providus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Proxime*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proximum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Proximus*, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Prudens*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl.,
399, 5.
- ps, genit. of nouns in, 88.
- Pudet*, constr., 410.
- Punishment, w. verbs of condemn-
ing, 410, 5.
- Purgo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w.
conjuncts., 490; pure purpose,

491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Inf. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.
Pyrites, decl. of, 50.

QU, changed, 258.
Quaero, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Qualis, qualiscumque, qualisqualis, 187, 6; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 5.
 Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.
Quam, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.

Quamquam, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.
Quantumvis, quantumvis, w. subj., 515 ff.

Quando, w. indic. or subj., 520.
 Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 23, 1. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 613-654; final syllables, 613 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.

Quantus, 187, 6; indefinite, 188, 5.
Quasi, w. subj., 503, 506.

Qui, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo, qua*, 187, 2; 188, 3. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff.
Qui, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur, vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicumque*, 187, 4.

Quia, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quidam, indef., 191, 455.
Quidem, place in clause, 602, III.
Quilibet, 191; use of, 458.
Quin, w. subj., 489, 498.
Quinam, 188, 4.
Quinarius, 712.

Quippe, w. relative, 519, 3.
Quis, interrog., 188; indef. 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.

Quis, for *quibus*, 187, 2.
Quisnam, 188, 4.

Quispiam, 191; use of, 455.
Quisquam, 191; use of, 457.

Quisque, 191; w. abl. absol., 431, 6; use of, 458; w. plur. verb., 461, 3.

Quisquis, 187, 4.
Quitum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Quivis, 191; use of, 458.
Quo, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.
Quoad, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or sub., 521 ff.
Quod, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.
Quojus, quoi, for *cujus, cui*, 187, 2.
Quominus, w. subj., 499.
Quoniam, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quoque, place in the clause, 602, III.
Quot, quotus, 187, 6; 188, 5.
Quum, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 3.

R for *s*, 35; 258, I., 5. Nouns in, 55; genit. of, 77; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.

R, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Rastrum, plur. *rastrī, rastra*, 143.
Ratum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Re, red, 338, 3.
-re, for *ria*, 236.

Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.
Recordor, w. gen., 406, II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.

Recuso, constr., 499, 1, 2.
 Reduplicated perfects, 261, 270, 273; quantity of, 652.

Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.
Refertur, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.

Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.
 Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.

Regno, w. gen., 409, 3.
 Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use of, 453.

Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus, solus, dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I.-IV.; w. sub. of condition, 513; of concession, 515; of cause, reason, 517, 519; w. infin., 531, 1.

Reliquum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.

Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.

Reminiscor, w. gen., 406, II.

Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.

Reposco, with two accs., 374, 2.

Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.

Respublica, decl. of, 126.

Restat ut, 495, 2.

Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500.

See *Relative clause*.

Retinentia, 704, I. 3.

Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.

Rhythmic accent, 659.

Rideo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Rivers, gender of names of, 42.

Rogo, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.

Roman pronunciation, 15 ff.

-*rs*, genit. of nouns in, 91.

Rudis, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.

Rules of Syntax, 591.

Rus, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.

Rutum, quantity of, 651, 3.

S SOUND of, 11 ff., 17 ff.; w. *c* or *g* forms *z*, 33; dropped, 34; changed to *r*, 35. Nouns in, 61; genit. of, 79 ff.; gend., 99 ff.

Sacer, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3).

Saepe, compared, 305, 4.

Sapio, w. accus., 371, 3.

Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.

Satago, *satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.

Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Satisfacio, w. dat., 385, 2.

Stitum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Scanning, 668.

Scazon, 683, 4.

Scidi, quantity of, 651, 2.

Secundum, w. accus., 433.

Sed, se, 338, 3.

Semi-deponents, 271, 3; 283; use of, 465, 3.

Senex, compared, 168, 3.

Sentences, syntax of, 343-361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound,

360. See also *Declarative, Exclamatory, Imperative, Interrogative*.

Separation, abl. of, 425.

Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.

Sequitur, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.

Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Servus, decl. of, 51.

See, 184, 7.

Sestertius, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.

Sexcenti, indefinite, 174, 4.

Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

-*si*, *sin*, in Greek datives, 68, 5.

Si minus, 584, 3.

Si non, and *nisi*, 508, 3.

Silver age, 706.

-*sim*, in perfect subj., 239, 4.

Similis, and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).

Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.

Simul, w. abl., 437, 2.

Sin, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.

Sin aliter, 584, 3.

Sine, w. abl., 434.

Singular, 44; wanting, 131.

Sino, constr., 551, II. 1.

Sitio, w. accus., 371, 3.

Stitum, quantity of, 651, 3.

-*so*, in fut. perfect, 239, 4; in frequency, 332.

Solus, decl. of, 151; *solus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.

Source, abl. of, 425.

Space, acc. of, 378.

Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.

Spirants, 3.

Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.

Stitum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Statuo, constr., 558, II.

Stem, 46; in the five decls., 47 ff.,

123. Stems in *s*, 61; in *i*, 62 ff. Verb-stem, 201; Pres. stem, 249 ff.: Perf. stem, 252 ff.; supine stem, 256 ff.
- Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compds., 654.
- Stiti, stiti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Sto*, w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
- Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
- Studiosus*, w. gen., 399.
- Sub*, in compds., 338, 2; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
- Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not. interrog., 558.
- Subjective genitive, 396, I.
- Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533.—Potential subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts., 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
- Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349. Substantives, see *Nouns*.
- Subter*, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4. *Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Sui*, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
- Sum*, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
- Super*, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4; in compds. with dat., 386.
- Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3), (2).
- Supersedeo*, 386, 2.
- Superus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 266 ff., 280 ff.; 284, 2. Use of, 567 ff.
- Supine-stem, formation of, 256 ff.
- Supine system, 215.
- Supplico*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Supra*, w. accus., 433.
- Suspensus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Swus*, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
- Syllables, 13, 18.
- Synaeresis, 669, II.
- Synaloepha, *Synaphia*, 669, I. 5.
- Synecdoche, 705, III.
- Synesis, 704, III. 8.
- Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
- Synopsis of declension, 69–98.
- Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
- Systole, 669, IV.
- T** SOUND of, 10 ff., 17 ff.; nouns, in, 58, 78; gender, 111. *T* dropped, 36, 258.
- T*, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
- Tælet*, constr., 410.
- Talis*, 186, 5.
- Talpa*, gender of, 48, 5.
- Tametsi*, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
- Tanquam, tanquam si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
- Tantus*, 186, 5; *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
- Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Ted* for *te*, 184, 8.
- Tempero*, constr., 385, 3.
- Templum*, decl. of, 51.
- Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
- Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571. Use of, in letters, 472, 1.
- Tense-signs, 242 ff.

- Tenus*, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
-ter, adverbs in, 335.
Terrae, locative, 424, 3.
Testis sum, constr., 551, 3.
Tete, 184, 7.
 Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
 Tetrapody, 656, 2.
 Tetrastich, 666.
 Th, 4.
 Thesis, 660.
 Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
-ticus, **-ticus**, **-tivus**, adjs. in, 325, 1; 328, 5.
-tim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
 Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
 Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
Timeo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
-tio, nouns in, 321.
Tis, for *tui*, 184, 8.
-to, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.
-to, in frequen., 332.
-tor, nouns in, 321.
Tot, totus, 186, 5. *Totus*, decl. of, 151.
 Towns, gender of names of, 42; constr.,—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; abl. or locative, 421, II.
Trans, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. accus. 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.
 Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.
 Trees, gender of names of, 42.
 Trimeter, 663, 2.
 Tripody, 656, 2.
 Tristich, 666.
 Trochaic verse, 679 ff.
-trum, nouns in, 320.
-tum, nouns in, 317.
Tu, decl. of, 184.
Tuli, quantity of, 651, 2.
-tura, nouns in, 321.
-tus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Tuus, decl. of, 185.
U, SOUND of, 6 ff., 15; w. sound of *u*, 7, 5), 15, 4. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 116, 118.
U, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 644.
-u, for *ui* in dat., 117.
Ubi, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).
-ubus, in dat. and abl., 66, 117.
Ui, as diphthong, 9.
-uis, for *us*, in genit., 117.
-ula, nouns in, 320, 5.
-ulentus, adjs. in, 323.
-uleus, in derivatives, 315, 5.
Ullus, decl. of, 151; use of, 457.
Ullior, *ullimus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Ultra, w. accus., 433.
-ulus, **ula**, **ulum**, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.
-um, for *arum*, 49; for *orum*, 52; in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 57.
-undus, **undi**, for *endus*, *endi*, 238.
Unus, decl. of, 151, 175; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
Unusquisque, 191, 5.
-ur, genit. of nouns in, 111, 114.
-urio, desideratives in, 332, III.
us, for *e* in voc. sing., 52; nouns in, 61, 116; gender, 111, 115 ff., 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final quantity of, 627.
Usque, w. accus., 437, 1.
Usus, constr., 419.
-ut, nouns in, 58; genit., 111.
Ut, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Ut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
Ut quisque—ita, 458, 2.
Uter uterunque, 151.
Uterlibet, uterque, utervis, 151. *Uterque*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Utinam, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.
Utor, constr., 419; 419, 4.
Utpote, w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Utrum, 346, II. 2.
-utus, adjs. in, 323.
-uus, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.
-ux, genitive of nouns in, 96.
V, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2; 258, II. 4.
Vacuus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.
 Value, genit. of, 396, IV.
Vannus, gender of, 53.
Velut, velut si, w. subj., 503, 506.

Verbal inflections, table of, 213 ff.

Verbs, etymology of — Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–214. Verbal inflections, 213 ff. Synopsis, 216–230. Periphrastic conj., 231 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Comparative view of conjs., 240. Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.; tense signs, 242 ff.; mood signs, 244 ff.; personal endings, 247. Formation of stems, 249 ff. Euphonic changes in stems, 258. Classification of verbs, 259–288. Irreg. verbs, 289–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive*, *Intrans.*, *Finite*, *Deponent*, *Semi-depon.*, *Impersonal*, *Frequent.*, *Incept.*, *Desiderat.*, *Diminutive*.

Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581. — Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559–566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571–581.

Verb-stem, 201, 249.

Vereor, constr., 492, 4.

Verisimile est, *verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.

Vero, place in clause, 602, III.

Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.

Versification, 655. — Feet, 656 ff.

Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.

Versus, w. accus., 433.

Vescor, constr., 419; 419, 4.

Vestras, 185, 3.

Vestri, *vestrum*, 396, III. 1; 446, 3.

Veto, constr., 551, II. 1.

Vetus, compared, 167.

Vicinus, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.

Vir, decl. of, 51, 4.

Virgil, versification of, 696.

Vocative, 52, 68, 3. Syntax of, 369.

Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs*, *syntax of*.

Volens, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.

Volo, constr., 551, II. 1.

-volus, compds. in, compared, 164.

Voti damnari, 410, 5 (1).

Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 15 ff.; changes in, 27 ff. Variable vowels, 57, 2.

W, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.

Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.

Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558.

VI.

Weights, Roman, 714.

Winds, gender of names of, 42.

Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.

Words, arrangement of, 592.

X, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 59, 92 ff.; gender of, 105, 108.

Y, ONLY in Greek words, 2.

Nouns in, 73; gender, 111.

Y, quantity of, — final, 617; in increments, 638.

-ys, nouns in, 68, 2; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.

-yz, nouns in, 97.

Z, ONLY in Greek words, 2.

Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

T A B L E

Showing the corresponding articles in the two editions.

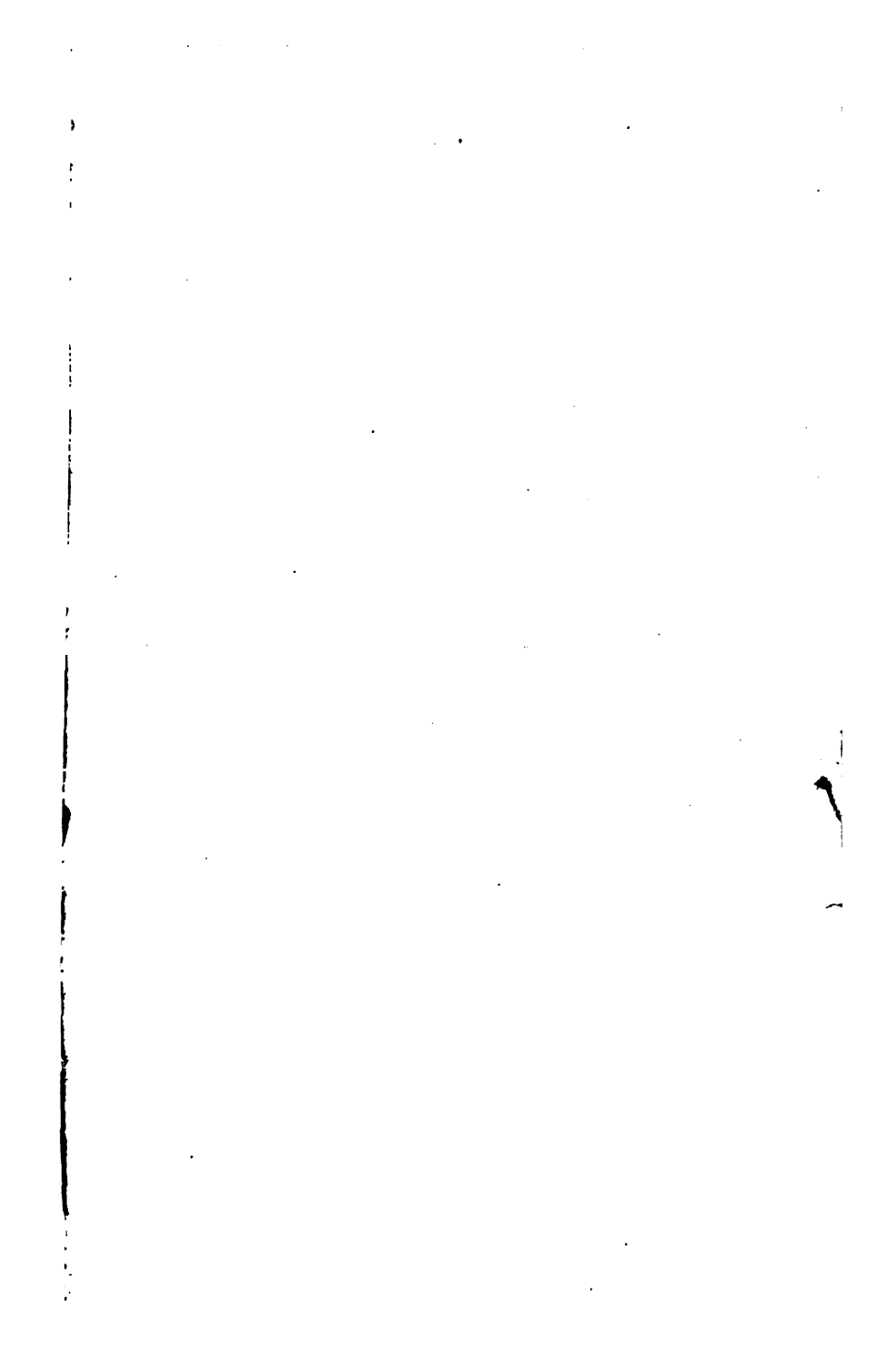
OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
1-12.....	1-12	64.....	75
13.....	—	65.....	76
14-16.....	19	66.....	77
17.....	13, 18	67.....	78
18, 19.....	14, 18	68.....	79
—.....	15-17	69.....	80
20-23.....	20-23	70.....	81
24.....	23, 1	71.....	82
25.....	—	72.....	83
26.....	24, 25	73.....	84
27.....	25, 4	74.....	85
28.....	25, 5	75.....	86-88
—.....	26-36	76.....	89-91
29.....	37	77.....	92
30.....	38	78.....	93
31.....	39	79.....	94
32.....	40	80.....	95
33.....	41	81.....	96
34.....	41, 1	82.....	97
35.....	42	83.....	98
36.....	43	84.....	67, 1
37.....	44	85, 87.....	62
38.....	45	86.....	68, 3
39.....	46	88.....	67
40.....	47	89.....	65
41.....	46, 1	90.....	67, 58, 2, 66, 68, 5
42.....	48	91-98.....	68
42, 3.....	49	99-104.....	99-104
43.....	50	—.....	105
44.....	48, 5	105.....	106
45.....	51	106, 107.....	107
45, 5.....	52	108-116.....	108-116
46.....	54	116, 4.....	117
47.....	53	117.....	119
48.....	55	118.....	118
49.....	56	119.....	120
50.....	57-59	120.....	121
50.....	63, 64	121-123.....	122, 123
51.....	60, 61	124-148.....	124-148
—.....	62, 66	148.....	149, 150
52-54.....	57, 63, 67	149.....	151
55-57.....	—	150.....	152
58.....	69	151.....	153
59.....	70	152.....	154
60.....	71	153.....	155
61.....	72	154-158.....	156-158
62.....	73	159-174.....	159-174
63.....	74	175.....	175, 176

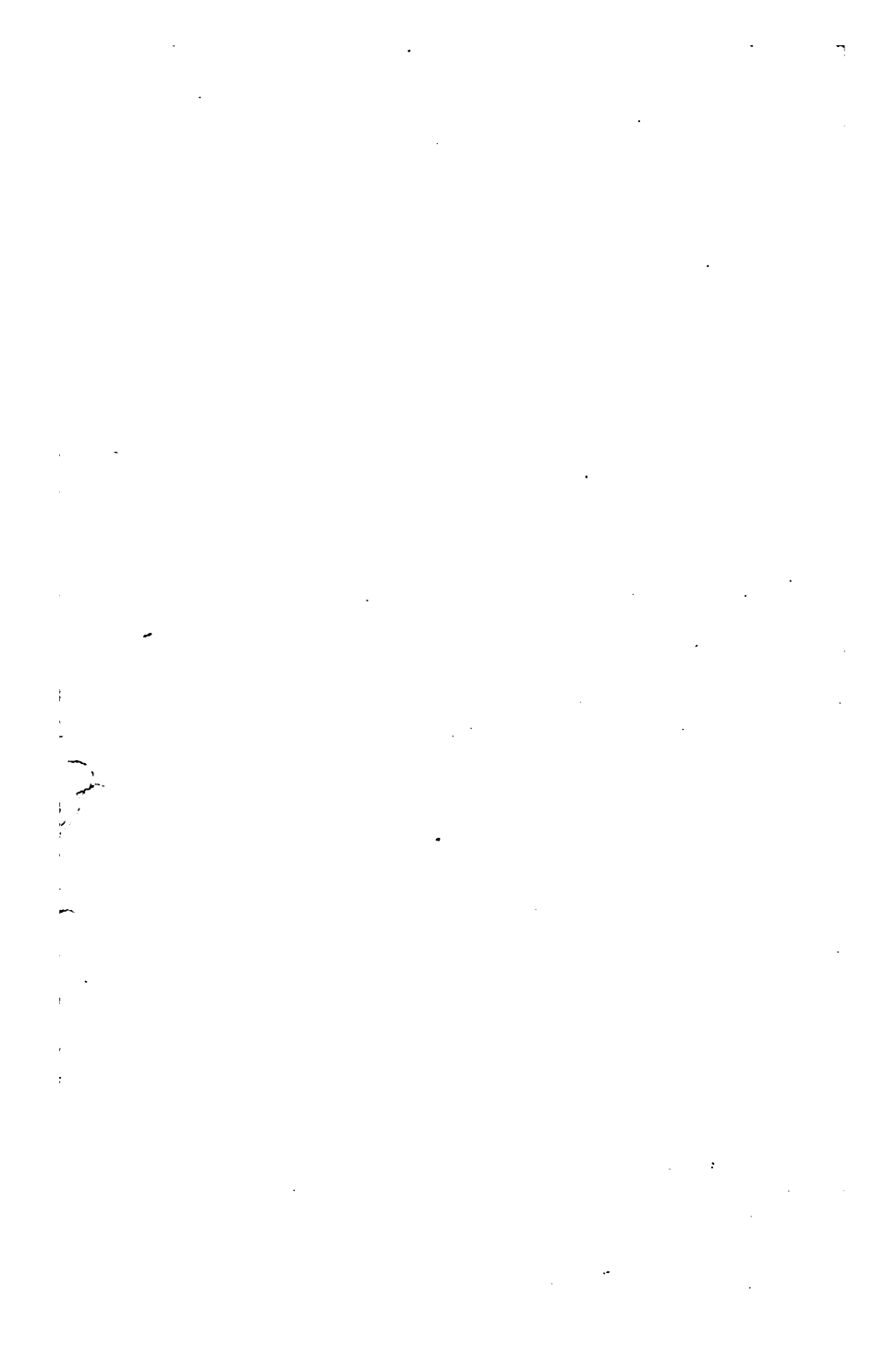
TABLE OF OLD AND NEW ARTICLES.

357

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
176.....	175	255-258.....	256, 257
177-198.....	177-198	259, 260.....	214
199, 200.....	199	261.....	259
201.....	200	262.....	260
202.....	201	263.....	262
203.....	202	264.....	261
204.....	203, 204	265.....	263
205-212.....	205-212	266.....	264
213.....	221	266, II.....	265
214.....	222	266, III.....	268
215.....	223	267.....	266
216.....	217	268.....	267
217.....	218	269.....	269, 270, III.
218.....	219	270.....	270, II.
219.....	224	271.....	270, I.
220.....	220	272.....	271
221.....	225	273.....	272
222.....	226	273, II.....	279
223.....	227	273, III.....	272, II., 273, III.
224.....	228	274.....	280
225.....	229	275.....	281
226.....	230	276.....	274-278
227, 228, 230.....	231	277, 278.....	276, 278, 3
229, 231.....	232	279.....	273, II.
232, 233.....	233	280.....	273, I.
234-239.....	234-239	281.....	282
240.....	213	282.....	283
241.....	215	283.....	284
242-247.....	213, 216, 240	284.....	285, 286
.....	241-248	285.....	287
242.....	249-251	286.....	288
248.....	258	287.....	289
249.....	221	288-290.....	290
250.....	261, 1	291-721.....	291-721
251-254.....	252-255		









STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Arnold's Greek Reading Book, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

First Lessons in Greek; * or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

Herodotus, Selections from; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.

— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.

Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 759 pages.

— **Greek Reader.** 12mo.

— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

— **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

— **Anabasis**. With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 898 pages.

— **Anabasis**. Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by John J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

— **Cyropædia**, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's Oedipus Tyrannus. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 861 pages.

Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 867 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., 549 & 551 BROADWAY, N. Y.,

PUBLISHED UPWARD OF

800 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.